



# Operating Instructions VLT<sup>®</sup> HVAC Drive FC 102

315-1400 kW





**Contents**

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| <b>1 Introduction</b>                                     | <b>4</b> |
| 1.1 Purpose of the Manual                                 | 4        |
| 1.2 Additional Resources                                  | 4        |
| 1.3 Document and Software Version                         | 4        |
| 1.4 Approvals and Certifications                          | 4        |
| 1.4.1 Approvals   | 4        |
| 1.5 Disposal  | 5        |
| 1.6 Abberviations and Conventions                         | 5        |
| <b>2 Safety</b>   | <b>7</b> |
| 2.1 Qualified Personnel                                   | 7        |
| 2.2 Safety Regulations                                    | 7        |
| 2.2.1 Discharge Time                                      | 7        |
| 2.2.2 Safe Torque Off (STO)                               | 8        |
| <b>3 Mechanical Installation</b>                          | <b>9</b> |
| 3.1 Pre-installation                                      | 9        |
| 3.1.1 Planning the Installation Site                      | 9        |
| 3.1.1.1 Inspection on Receipt                             | 9        |
| 3.1.2 Receiving the Frequency Converter                   | 9        |
| 3.1.3 Transportation and Unpacking                        | 9        |
| 3.1.4 Lifting   | 9        |
| 3.1.5 Mechanical Dimensions                               | 11       |
| 3.2 Mechanical Installation                               | 15       |
| 3.2.1 Preparation for Installation                        | 15       |
| 3.2.2 Tools Required                                      | 15       |
| 3.2.3 General Considerations                              | 15       |
| 3.2.4 Terminal Locations, F8-F14                          | 16       |
| 3.2.4.1 Inverter and Rectifier, Enclosure Sizes F8 and F9 | 16       |
| 3.2.4.2 Inverter, Enclosure Sizes F10 and F11             | 17       |
| 3.2.4.3 Inverter, Enclosure Sizes F12 and F13             | 18       |
| 3.2.4.4 Inverter, Enclosure Size F14                      | 19       |
| 3.2.4.5 Rectifier, Enclosure Sizes F10, F11, F12 and F13  | 19       |
| 3.2.4.6 Rectifier, Enclosure Size F14                     | 20       |
| 3.2.4.7 Options Cabinet, Enclosure Size F9                | 21       |
| 3.2.4.8 Options Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F11/F13          | 22       |
| 3.2.5 Cooling and Airflow                                 | 22       |
| 3.3 Frame size F Panel Options                            | 26       |
| 3.3.1 Panel Options                                       | 26       |

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>4 Electrical Installation</b>   | <b>28</b> |
| 4.1 Electrical Installation  | 28        |
| 4.1.1 Power Connections  | 28        |
| 4.1.2 Grounding  | 35        |
| 4.1.3 Extra Protection (RCD)   | 35        |
| 4.1.4 RFI Switch   | 35        |
| 4.1.5 Torque   | 35        |
| 4.1.6 Screened Cables  | 36        |
| 4.1.7 Motor Cable  | 36        |
| 4.1.8 Brake Cable for Frequency Converters with Factory-installed Brake Chopper Option | 37        |
| 4.1.9 Shielding against Electrical Noise   | 37        |
| 4.1.10 Mains Connection  | 37        |
| 4.1.11 External Fan Supply   | 38        |
| 4.1.12 Fuses   | 38        |
| 4.1.13 Motor Insulation  | 41        |
| 4.1.14 Motor Bearing Currents  | 41        |
| 4.1.15 Brake Resistor Temperature Switch   | 41        |
| 4.1.16 Control Cable Routing   | 41        |
| 4.1.17 Access to Control Terminals   | 42        |
| 4.1.18 Electrical Installation, Control Terminals                                      | 42        |
| 4.2 Connection Examples  | 43        |
| 4.2.1 Start/Stop   | 43        |
| 4.2.2 Pulse Start/Stop   | 43        |
| 4.3.1 Electrical Installation, Control Cables  | 45        |
| 4.3.2 Switches S201, S202 and S801   | 47        |
| 4.4 Final Set-up and Test  | 48        |
| 4.5 Additional Connections   | 49        |
| 4.5.1 Mechanical Brake Control   | 49        |
| 4.5.2 Parallel Connection of Motors  | 49        |
| 4.5.3 Motor Thermal Protection   | 50        |
| 4.5.4 Mechanical Brake Control   | 50        |
| <b>5 How to Operate the Frequency Converter</b>  | <b>51</b> |
| 5.1.1 3 Ways of Operating  | 51        |
| 5.1.2 How to Operate Graphical LCP (GLCP)  | 51        |
| 5.1.3 RS-485 Bus Connection  | 54        |
| 5.1.4 How to Connect a PC to the Frequency Converter                                   | 55        |
| 5.1.5 PC Software Tools  | 55        |
| 5.1.6 Tips and Tricks  | 56        |

---

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 5.1.7 Quick Transfer of Parameter Settings when Using GLCP | 56         |
| 5.1.8 Initialisation to Default Settings                   | 56         |
| <b>6 How to Programme</b>                                  | <b>58</b>  |
| 6.1.1 Parameter Set-Up                                     | 58         |
| 6.1.2 Quick Menu Mode                                      | 62         |
| 6.1.3 Function Setups                                      | 66         |
| 6.1.4 5-1* Digital Inputs                                  | 76         |
| 6.1.5 Main Menu Mode                                       | 88         |
| 6.1.6 Parameter Selection                                  | 88         |
| 6.1.7 Changing Data  | 89         |
| 6.1.8 Changing a Text Value                                | 89         |
| 6.1.9 Changing a Group of Numeric Data Values              | 89         |
| 6.1.10 Changing of Data Value, Step-by-Step                | 89         |
| 6.1.11 Readout and Programming of Indexed Parameters       | 90         |
| 6.2 Parameter Menu Structure                               | 90         |
| <b>7 General Specifications</b>                            | <b>95</b>  |
| <b>8 Warnings and Alarms</b>                               | <b>106</b> |
| <b>Index</b>   | <b>118</b> |

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Purpose of the Manual

The frequency converter is designed to provide high shaft performance on electrical motors. Read these operating instructions carefully for proper use. Incorrect handling of the frequency converter may cause improper operation of the frequency converter or related equipment, shorten lifetime or cause other troubles.

These operating instructions provide information on:

- Start-up
- Installation
- Programming
- Troubleshooting
- *Chapter 1 Introduction* introduces the manual and informs about approvals, symbols, and abbreviations used in this manual.
- *Chapter 2 Safety* entails instructions on how to handle the frequency converter in a safe way.
- *Chapter 3 Mechanical Installation* guides through the mechanical installations.
- *Chapter 4 Electrical Installation* guides through the electrical installations.
- *Chapter 5 How to Operate the Frequency Converter* explains how to operate the frequency converter via the LCP.
- *Chapter 6 How to Programme* explains how to programme the frequency converter via the LCP.
- *Chapter 7 General Specifications* contains technical data about the frequency converter.
- *Chapter 8 Warnings and Alarms* assists in solving problems that may occur when using the frequency converter.
- *Temperature Derating Guide Application Note.*
- *MCT 10 Set-up Software* Operating Instructions enables the user to configure the frequency converter from a Windows™ based PC environment.
- *Danfoss VLT® Energy Box software* at [www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions](http://www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions).
- *VLT® HVAC Drive Drive Applications.*
- *PROFIBUS Installation Guide.*
- *VLT® DeviceNet MCA 104 Operating Instructions.*
- *VLT® HVAC Drive FC 102 BACnet Operating Instructions.*
- *VLT® HVAC Drive FC 102 LonWorks Operating Instructions.*
- *VLT® HVAC Drive FC 102 Metasys N2 Operating Instructions.*
- *VLT® HVAC Drive FC 102 FLN Operating Instructions.*
- *Output Filter Design Guide.*
- *Brake Resistor MCE 101 Design Guide.*

Danfoss technical literature is available in print from your local Danfoss Sales Office or online at: [www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Documentations/Technical+Documentation.htm](http://www.danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Documentations/Technical+Documentation.htm)

## 1.3 Document and Software Version

This manual is regularly reviewed and updated. All suggestions for improvement are welcome. *Table 1.1* shows the document version and the corresponding software version.

| Edition  | Remarks           | Software version |
|----------|-------------------|------------------|
| MG16B2xx | Replaces MG16B1xx | 4.1x             |

Table 1.1 Document and Software Version

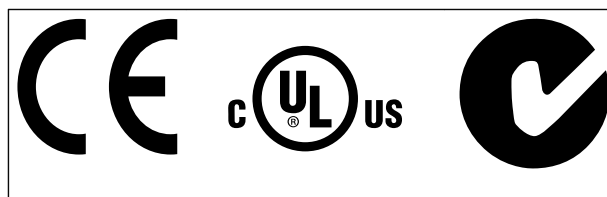
VLT® is a registered trademark.

## 1.2 Additional Resources

- *VLT® HVAC Drive FC 102 Operating Instructions* provide the necessary information for getting the frequency converter up and running.
- *VLT® HVAC Drive FC 102 Design Guide* entails all technical information about the frequency converter and customer design and applications.
- *VLT® HVAC Drive FC 102 Programming Guide* provides information on how to programme and includes complete parameter descriptions.
- *Analog I/O Option MCB 109 Installation Instructions.*

## 1.4 Approvals and Certifications

### 1.4.1 Approvals



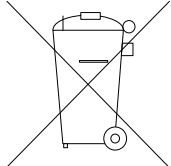
The frequency converter complies with UL508C thermal memory retention requirements. For more information, refer to the section *Motor Thermal Protection* in the product specific *design guide*.

**NOTICE**

**Imposed limitations on the output frequency (due to export control regulations):**

From software version 6.72 onwards, the output frequency of the frequency converter is limited to 590 Hz. Software versions 6x.xx also limit the maximum output frequency to 590 Hz, but these versions cannot be flashed, that is, neither downgraded nor upgraded.

1.5 Disposal



Do not dispose of equipment containing electrical components together with domestic waste.  
Collect it separately in accordance with local and currently valid legislation.

1.6 Abbreviations and Conventions

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| 60° AVM          | 60° Asynchronous vector modulation  |
| A                | Ampere/AMP  |
| AC               | Alternating current   |
| AD               | Air discharge   |
| AEO              | Automatic energy optimisation   |
| AI               | Analog input  |
| AMA              | Automatic motor adaptation  |
| AWG              | American wire gauge   |
| °C               | Degrees Celsius   |
| CD               | Contant discharge   |
| CM               | Common mode   |
| CT               | Constant torque   |
| DC               | Direct current  |
| DI               | Digital input   |
| DM               | Differential mode   |
| D-TYPE           | Drive dependent   |
| EMC              | Electro magnetic compatibility  |
| ETR              | Electronic thermal relay  |
| f <sub>JOG</sub> | Motor frequency when jog function is activated.                             |
| f <sub>M</sub>   | Motor frequency   |
| f <sub>MAX</sub> | The maximum output frequency the frequency converter applies on its output. |
| f <sub>MIN</sub> | The minimum motor frequency from frequency converter                        |
| f <sub>M,N</sub> | Nominal motor frequency   |
| FC               | Frequency converter   |
| g                | Gramme  |
| Hiperface®       | Hiperface® is a registered trademark by Stegmann                            |

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| hp                          | Horsepower  |
| HTL                         | HTL encoder (10-30 V) pulses - High-voltage transistor logic                                  |
| Hz                          | Hertz   |
| I <sub>INV</sub>            | Rated inverter output current   |
| I <sub>LIM</sub>            | Current limit   |
| I <sub>M,N</sub>            | Nominal motor current   |
| I <sub>VLT,MAX</sub>        | The maximum output current  |
| I <sub>VLT,N</sub>          | The rated output current supplied by the frequency converter                                  |
| kHz                         | Kilohertz   |
| LCP                         | Local control panel   |
| lsb                         | Least significant bit   |
| m                           | Meter   |
| mA                          | Milliampere   |
| MCM                         | Mille circular mil  |
| MCT                         | Motion control tool   |
| mH                          | Millihenry inductance   |
| min                         | Minute  |
| ms                          | Millisecond   |
| msb                         | Most significant bit  |
| η <sub>VLT</sub>            | Efficiency of the frequency converter defined as ratio between power output and power input.  |
| nF                          | Nanofarad   |
| NLCP                        | Numerical local control panel   |
| Nm                          | Newton meters   |
| n <sub>s</sub>              | Synchronous motor speed   |
| On-line/Off-line Parameters | Changes to on-line parameters are activated immediately after the data value is changed.      |
| P <sub>br,cont.</sub>       | Rated power of the brake resistor (average power during continuous braking).                  |
| PCB                         | Printed circuit board   |
| PCD                         | Process data  |
| PELV                        | Protective extra low voltage  |
| P <sub>m</sub>              | Frequency converter nominal output power as HO.   |
| P <sub>M,N</sub>            | Nominal motor power   |
| PM motor                    | Permanent magnet motor  |
| Process PID                 | The PID regulator maintains the desired speed, pressure, temperature, etc.                    |
| R <sub>br,nom</sub>         | The nominal resistor value that ensures a brake power on motor shaft of 150/160% for 1 minute |
| RCD                         | Residual current device   |
| Regen                       | Regenerative terminals  |
| R <sub>min</sub>            | Minimum permissible brake resistor value by frequency converter                               |
| RMS                         | Root mean square  |
| RPM                         | Revolutions per minute  |
| R <sub>rec</sub>            | Resistor value and resistance of the brake resistor   |
| s                           | Second  |

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| SFAVM            | Stator flux-oriented asynchronous vector modulation    |
| STW              | Status word  |
| SMPS             | Switch mode power supply                               |
| THD              | Total harmonic distortion                              |
| T <sub>LIM</sub> | Torque limit   |
| TTL              | TTL encoder (5 V) pulses - transistor transistor logic |
| U <sub>M,N</sub> | Nominal motor voltage                                  |
| V                | Volts  |
| VT               | Variable torque  |
| VVC <sup>+</sup> | Voltage vector control                                 |

Table 1.2 Abbreviations

**Conventions**

Numbered lists indicate procedures.

Bullet lists indicate other information and description of illustrations.

Italicised text indicates

- Cross reference
- Link
- Footnote
- Parameter name, parameter group name, parameter option

All dimensions are in mm [inch].

\* indicates a default setting of a parameter.



## 2 Safety

The following symbols are used in this document:

### **⚠ WARNING**

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which could result in death or serious injury.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which could result in minor or moderate injury. It can also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

### **NOTICE**

Indicates important information, including situations that can result in damage to equipment or property.

### 2.1 Qualified Personnel

Correct and reliable transport, storage, installation, operation, and maintenance are required for the trouble-free and safe operation of the frequency converter. Only qualified personnel are allowed to install or operate this equipment.

Qualified personnel are defined as trained staff, who are authorised to install, commission, and maintain equipment, systems, and circuits in accordance with pertinent laws and regulations. Additionally, the personnel must be familiar with the instructions and safety measures described in these operating instructions.

### 2.2 Safety Regulations

#### **⚠ WARNING**

##### **HIGH VOLTAGE**

Frequency converters contain high voltage when connected to AC mains input, DC power supply, or load sharing. Failure to perform installation, start-up, and maintenance by qualified personnel can result in death or serious injury.

- Installation, start-up, and maintenance must be performed by qualified personnel only.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

##### **UNINTENDED START**

When the frequency converter is connected to AC mains, DC power supply, or load sharing, the motor may start at any time. Unintended start during programming, service, or repair work can result in death, serious injury, or property damage. The motor can start by means of an external switch, a serial bus command, an input reference signal from the LCP, or after a cleared fault condition.

To prevent unintended motor start:

- Disconnect the frequency converter from the mains.
- Press [Off/Reset] on the LCP before programming parameters.
- The frequency converter, motor, and any driven equipment must be fully wired and assembled when the frequency converter is connected to AC mains, DC power supply, or load sharing.

### 2.2.1 Discharge Time

| Voltage [V] | Minimum waiting time (minutes) |             |
|-------------|--------------------------------|-------------|
|             | 30                             | 40          |
| 380-500 V   |                                | 315-1000 kW |
| 525-600 V   | 400-1400 kW                    |             |

Table 2.1 Discharge Time

#### **⚠ WARNING**

##### **LEAKAGE CURRENT HAZARD**

Leakage currents exceed 3.5 mA. Failure to ground the frequency converter properly can result in death or serious injury.

- Ensure the correct grounding of the equipment by a certified electrical installer.

**⚠ WARNING****EQUIPMENT HAZARD**

Contact with rotating shafts and electrical equipment can result in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that only trained and qualified personnel perform installation, start up, and maintenance.
- Ensure that electrical work conforms to national and local electrical codes.
- Follow the procedures in these operating instructions.

**⚠ WARNING****UNINTENDED MOTOR ROTATION  
WINDMILLING**

Unintended rotation of permanent magnet motors can result in serious injury or equipment damage.

- Ensure that permanent magnet motors are blocked to prevent unintended rotation.

**⚠ CAUTION****INTERNAL FAILURE HAZARD**

An internal failure in the frequency converter can result in serious injury, when the frequency converter is not properly closed.

- Ensure that all safety covers are in place and securely fastened before applying power.

### 2.2.2 Safe Torque Off (STO)

STO is an option. To run STO, additional wiring for the frequency converter is required. Refer to *VLT<sup>®</sup> Frequency Converters Safe Torque Off Operating Instructions* for further information.

### 3 Mechanical Installation

#### 3.1 Pre-installation

##### 3.1.1 Planning the Installation Site

**NOTICE**

Plan the installation of the frequency converter before commencing the installation. Neglecting this may result in extra work during and after installation.

Select the best possible operation site by considering the following (see details on the following pages, and the respective Design Guides):

- Ambient operating temperature
- Installation method
- How to cool the unit
- Position of the frequency converter
- Cable routing
- Ensure that the power source supplies the correct voltage and necessary current.
- Ensure that the motor current rating is within the maximum current from the frequency converter.
- If the frequency converter is without built-in fuses, ensure that the external fuses are rated correctly.

##### 3.1.1.1 Inspection on Receipt

After receiving the delivery, immediately check whether the scope of delivery matches the shipping documents. Danfoss does not honour claims for faults registered at a later time. Register a complaint immediately:

- With the carrier in case of visible transport damage.
- With the responsible Danfoss representative in case of visible defects or incomplete delivery.

##### 3.1.2 Receiving the Frequency Converter

When receiving the frequency converter, make sure that the packaging is intact, and be aware of any damage that might have occurred to the unit during transport. In case damage has occurred, immediately contact the shipping company to claim the damage.

##### 3.1.3 Transportation and Unpacking

Locate the frequency converter as close as possible to the final installation site before unpacking. Remove the box and handle the frequency converter on the pallet, as long as possible.

##### 3.1.4 Lifting

Always lift the frequency converter via the dedicated lifting eyes.

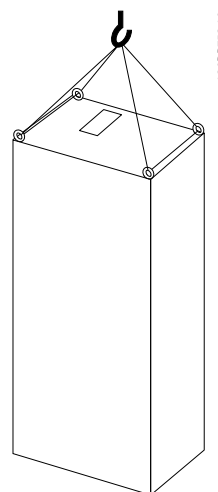


Illustration 3.1 Recommended Lifting Method, Enclosure Size F8.

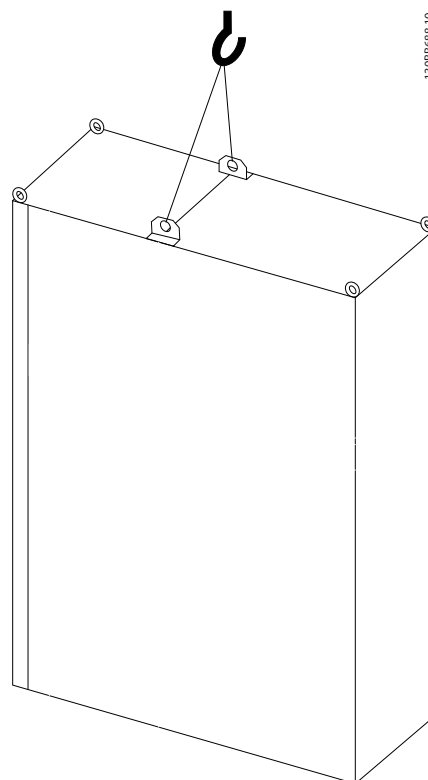


Illustration 3.2 Recommended Lifting Method, Enclosure Size F9/F10.

3

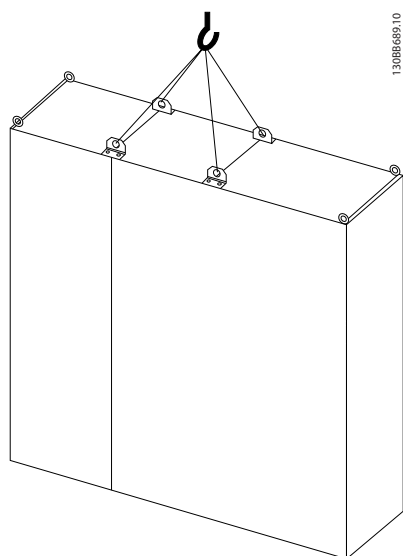


Illustration 3.3 Recommended Lifting Method, Enclosure Size F11/F12/F13/F14.

### **NOTICE**

The plinth is provided in the same packaging as the frequency converter, but is not attached during shipment. The plinth is required to allow airflow cooling to the frequency converter. Position the frequency converter on top of the plinth in the final installation location. The angle from the top of the frequency converter to the lifting cable should be  $>60^\circ$ . In addition to *Illustration 3.1* to *Illustration 3.3*, a spreader bar can be used to lift the frequency converter.

3.1.5 Mechanical Dimensions

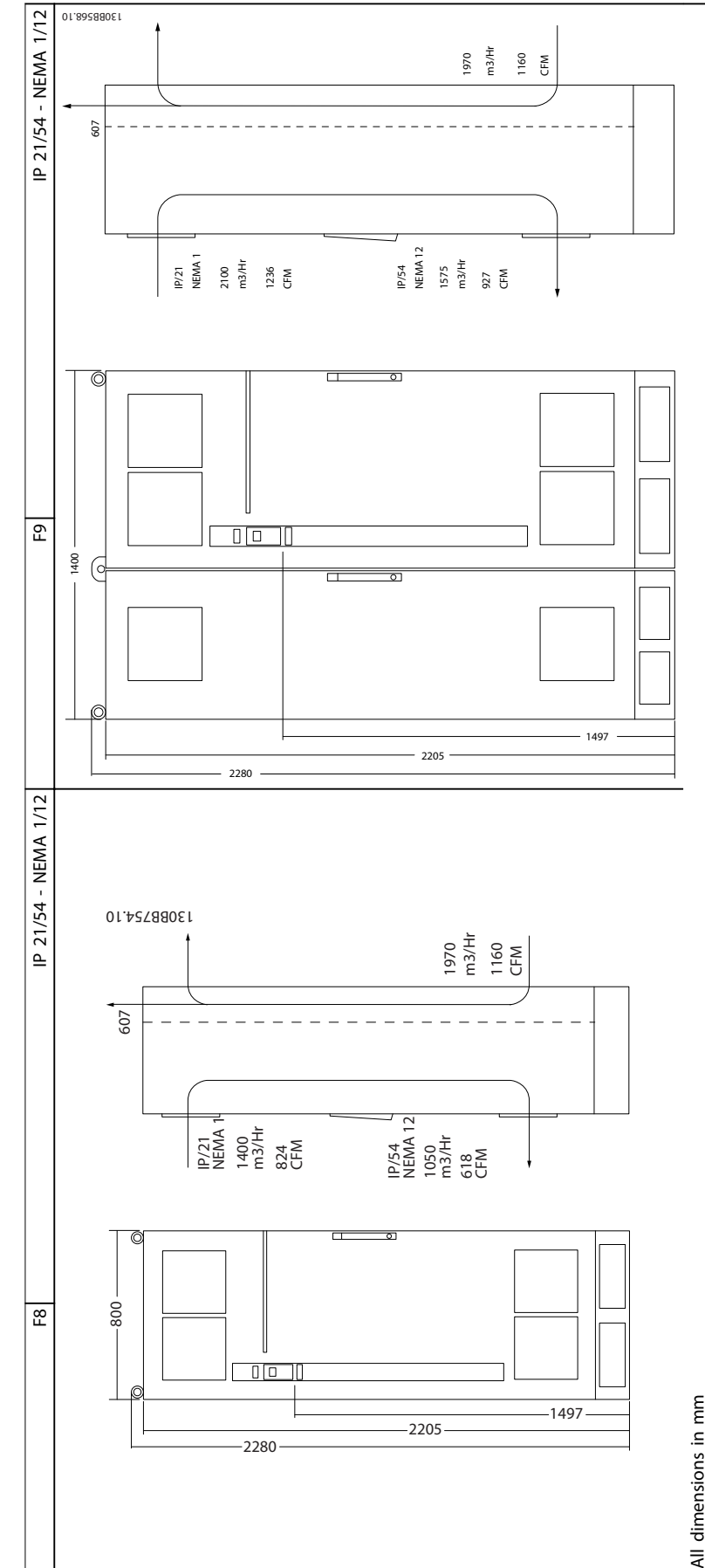
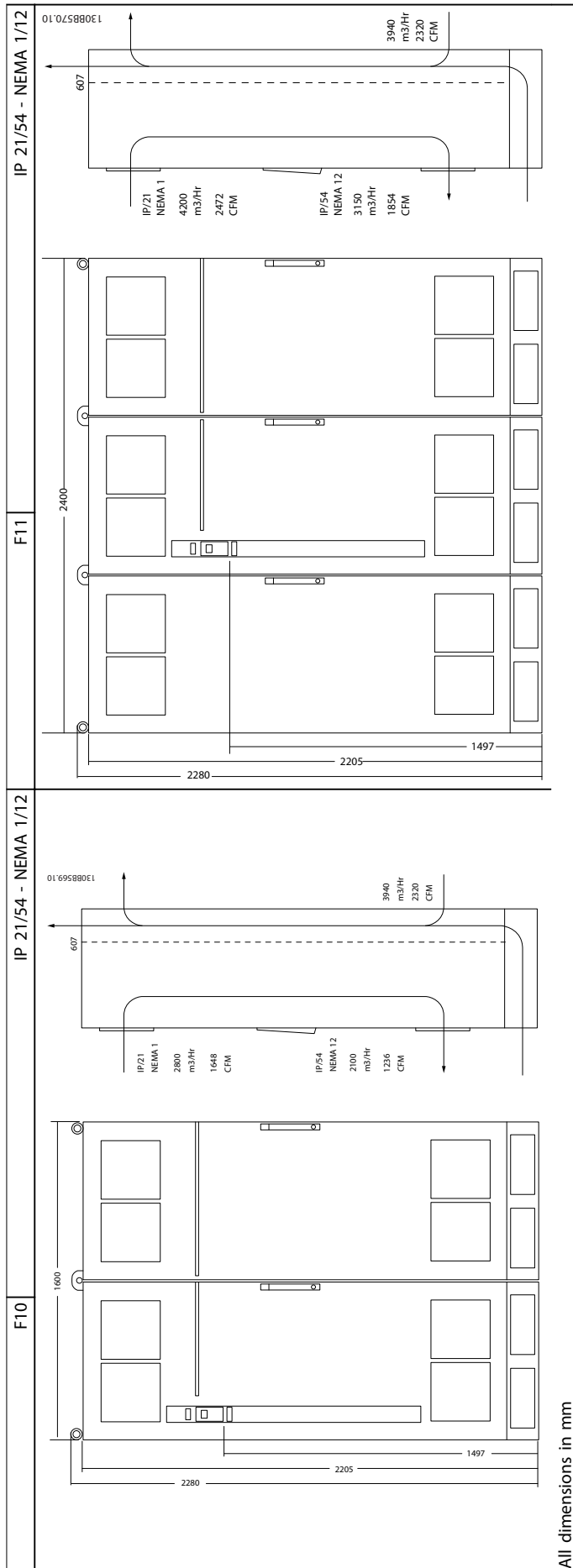


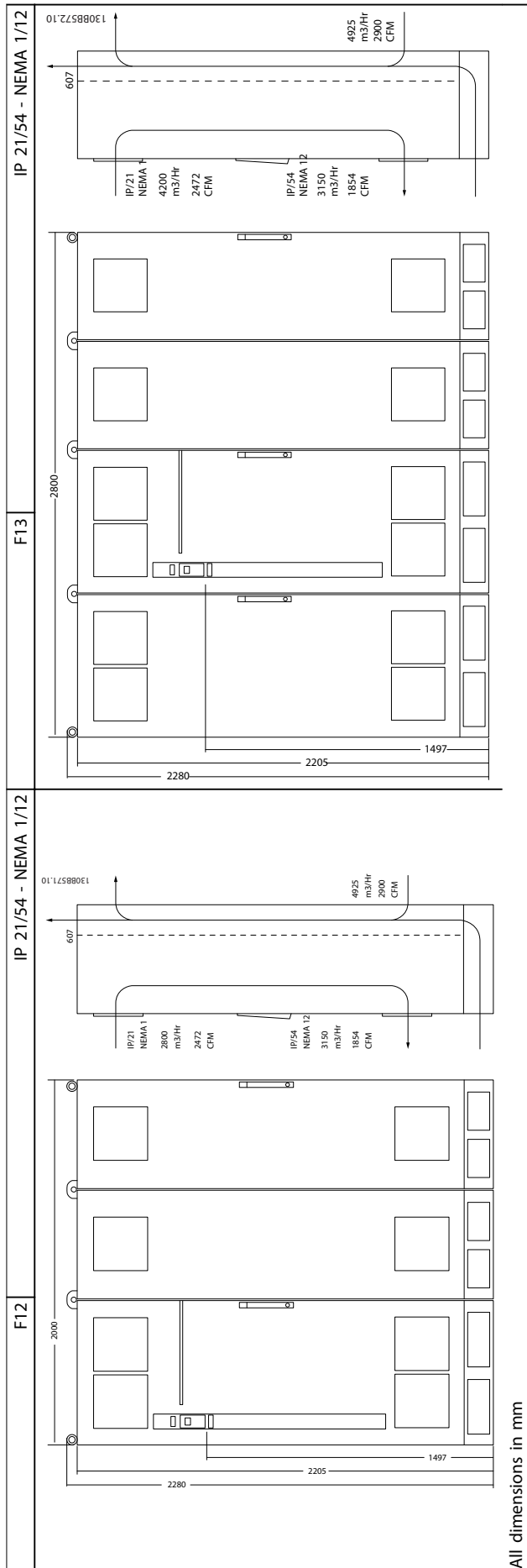
Table 3.1

3



All dimensions in mm

Table 3.2



All dimensions in mm

Table 3.3

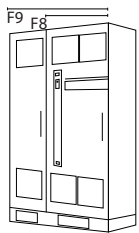

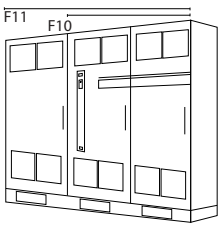

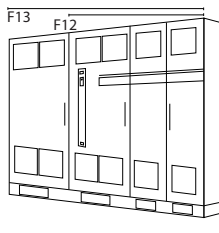
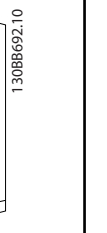
| Enclosure size                                   |                 | F8  | F9  | F10   | F11   | F12   | F13   |
|--|-----------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|  |                 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| High overload rated power - 160% overload torque |                 | 315 - 450 kW<br>(380 - 500 V)<br>400 - 630 kW<br>(525-690 V)                      |   | 500 - 710 kW<br>(380 - 500 V)<br>710 - 900 kW<br>(525-690 V)                      |   | 800 - 1000 kW<br>(380 - 500 V)<br>1000 - 1400 kW<br>(525-690 V)                     |   |
| IP NEMA  |                 | 21, 54<br>Type 12   |   | 21, 54<br>Type 12   |   | 21, 54<br>Type 12   |   |
| Shipping dimensions [mm]                         | Height          | 2324  | 2324  | 2324  | 2324  | 2324  | 2324  |
|  | Width           | 970   | 1568  | 1760  | 2559  | 2160  | 2960  |
|  | Depth           | 1130  | 1130  | 1130  | 1130  | 1130  | 1130  |
| Drive dimensions                                 | Height          | 2204  | 2204  | 2204  | 2204  | 2204  | 2204  |
|  | Width           | 800   | 1400  | 1600  | 2200  | 2000  | 2600  |
|  | Depth           | 606   | 606   | 606   | 606   | 606   | 606   |
|  | Max weight [kg] | 440   | 656   | 880   | 1096  | 1022  | 1238  |

Table 3.4 Mechanical Dimensions, Enclosure Sizes E and F

**NOTICE**

The F frames are available in 6 different sizes, F8, F9, F10, F11, F12 and F13. The F8, F10 and F12 consist of an inverter cabinet on the right and rectifier cabinet on the left. The F9, F11 and F13 have an additional options cabinet left of the rectifier cabinet. The F9 is an F8 with an additional options cabinet. The F11 is an F10 with an additional options cabinet. The F13 is an F12 with an additional options cabinet.



### 3.2 Mechanical Installation

#### 3.2.1 Preparation for Installation

Make the following preparations to ensure reliable and effective installation of the frequency converter:

- Provide a suitable mounting arrangement. The mounting arrangement depends on the design, weight, and torque of the frequency converter.
- Examine the mechanical drawings to ensure that the space requirements are met.
- Ensure that all wiring is done in accordance with national regulations.

#### 3.2.2 Tools Required

- Drill with 10 or 12 mm bit.
- Tape measure.
- Wrench with relevant metric sockets (7-17 mm).
- Extensions to wrench.
- Sheet metal punch for conduits or cable glands in IP21/Nema 1 and IP54 units
- Lifting bar to lift the unit (rod or tube max. Ø 25 mm (1 inch), able to lift minimum 400 kg (880 lbs)).
- Crane or other lifting aid to place the frequency converter in position.

#### 3.2.3 General Considerations

##### Space

Ensure sufficient space above and below the frequency converter to allow airflow and cable access. In addition, allow for enough space in front of the unit to open the panel door, see *Illustration 3.4* to *Illustration 3.10*.

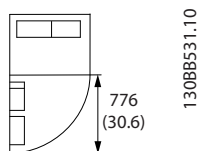


Illustration 3.4 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F8

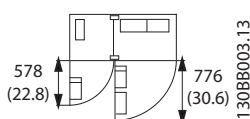


Illustration 3.5 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F9

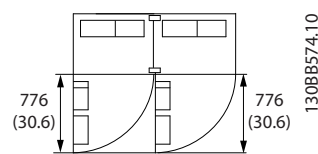


Illustration 3.6 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F10

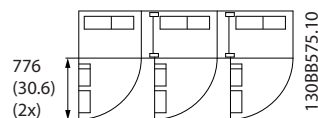


Illustration 3.7 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F11

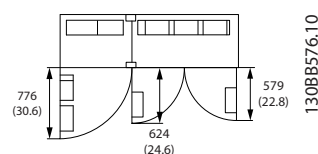


Illustration 3.8 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F12

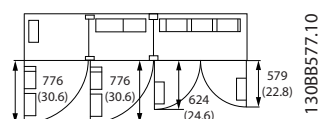


Illustration 3.9 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F13

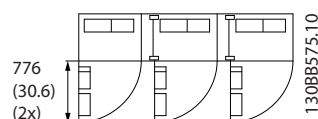


Illustration 3.10 Space in Front of Enclosure Size F14

##### Wire access

Ensure that proper wire access is present including the necessary bending allowance.

##### **NOTICE**

All cable lugs/shoes must mount within the width of the terminal bus bar.

### 3.2.4 Terminal Locations, F8-F14

The F enclosures are available in 7 different sizes, F8, F9, F10, F11, F12, F13, and F14. The F8, F10, F12, and F14 consist of an inverter cabinet on the right and rectifier cabinet on the left. The F9, F11 and F13 have an additional options cabinet left of the rectifier cabinet. The F9 is an F8 with an additional options cabinet. The F11 is an F10 with an additional options cabinet. The F13 is an F12 with an additional options cabinet.

3

#### 3.2.4.1 Inverter and Rectifier, Enclosure Sizes F8 and F9

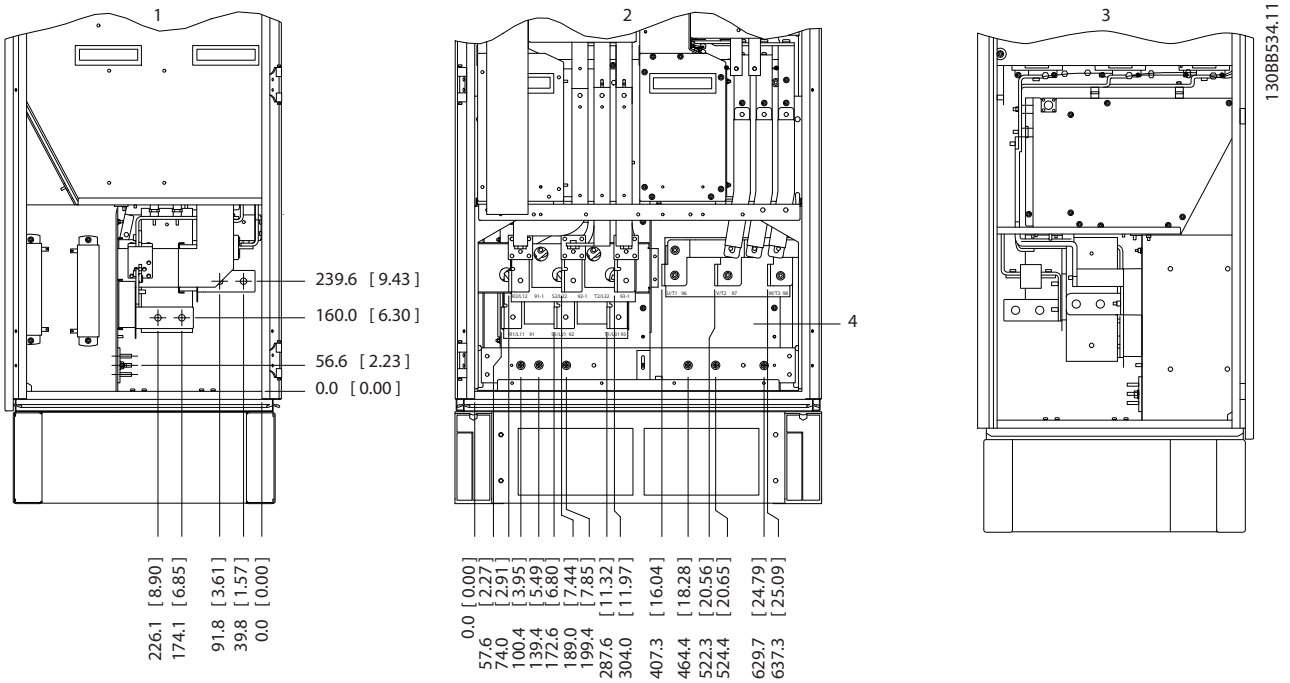


Illustration 3.11 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views. The gland plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

1) Ground bar

3.2.4.2 Inverter, Enclosure Sizes F10 and F11

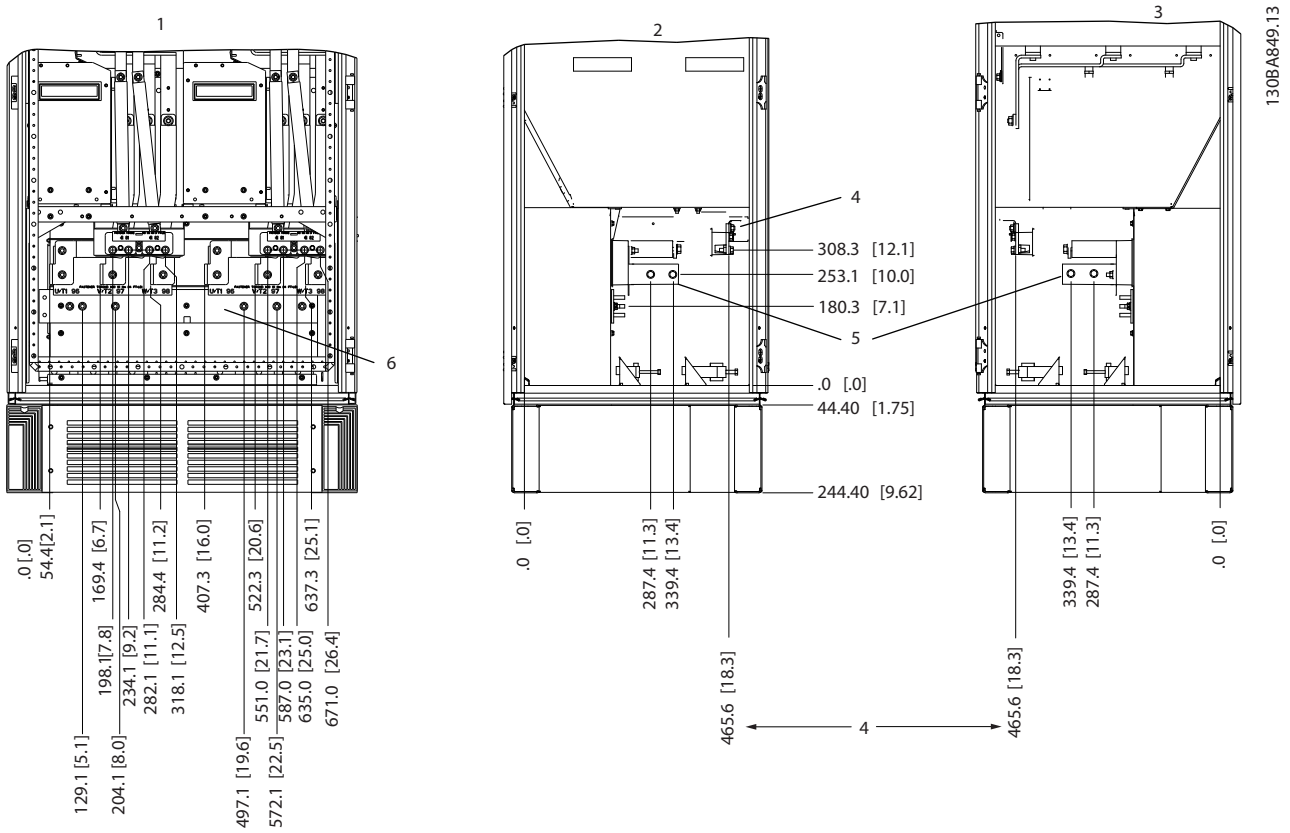


Illustration 3.12 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views. The gland plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

- 1) Ground bar
- 2) Motor terminals
- 3) Brake terminals

3.2.4.3 Inverter, Enclosure Sizes F12 and F13

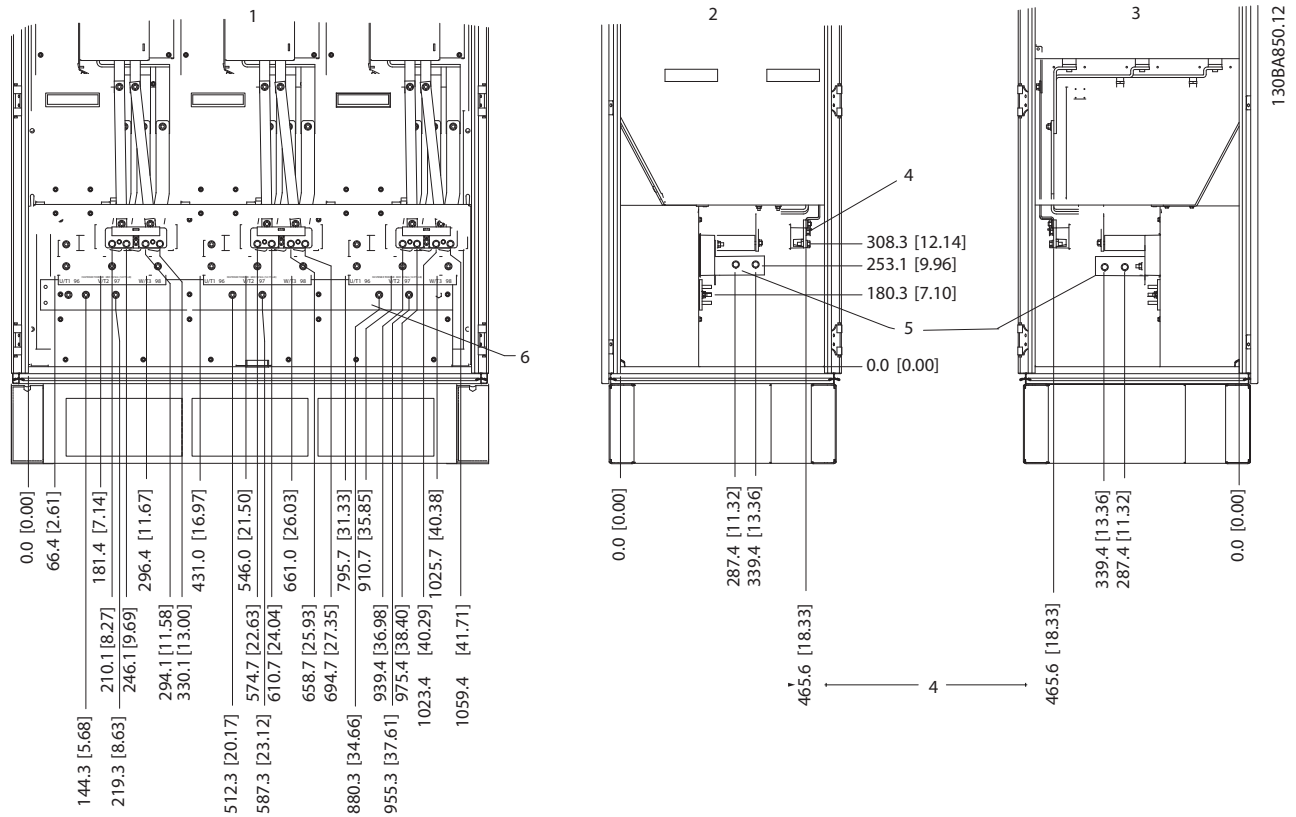
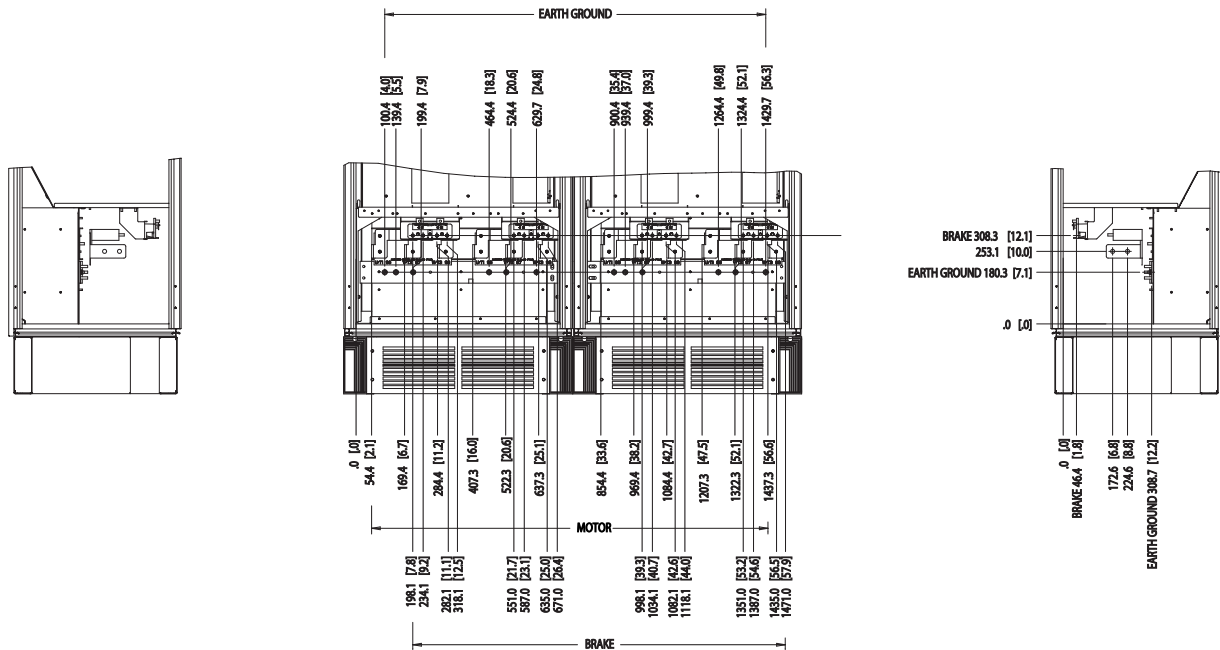


Illustration 3.13 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views. The gland plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

1) Ground bar

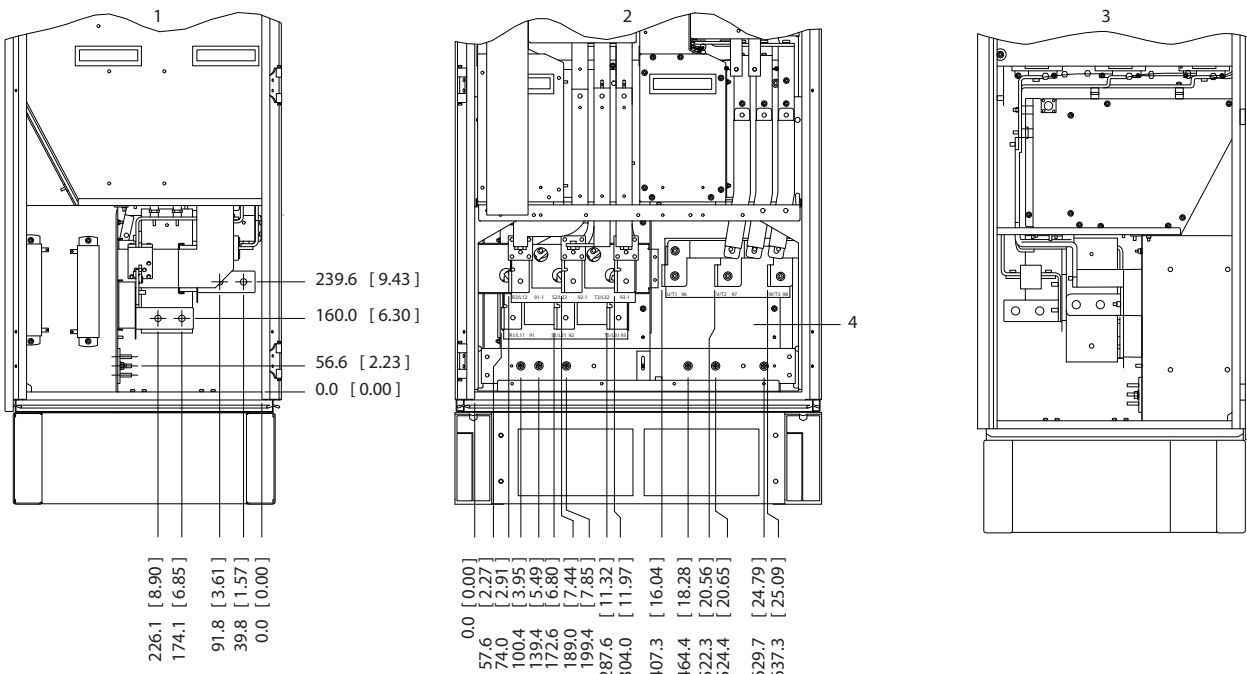
### 3.2.4.4 Inverter, Enclosure Size F14



1308C147.10

Illustration 3.14 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views. The gland plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

### 3.2.4.5 Rectifier, Enclosure Sizes F10, F11, F12 and F13



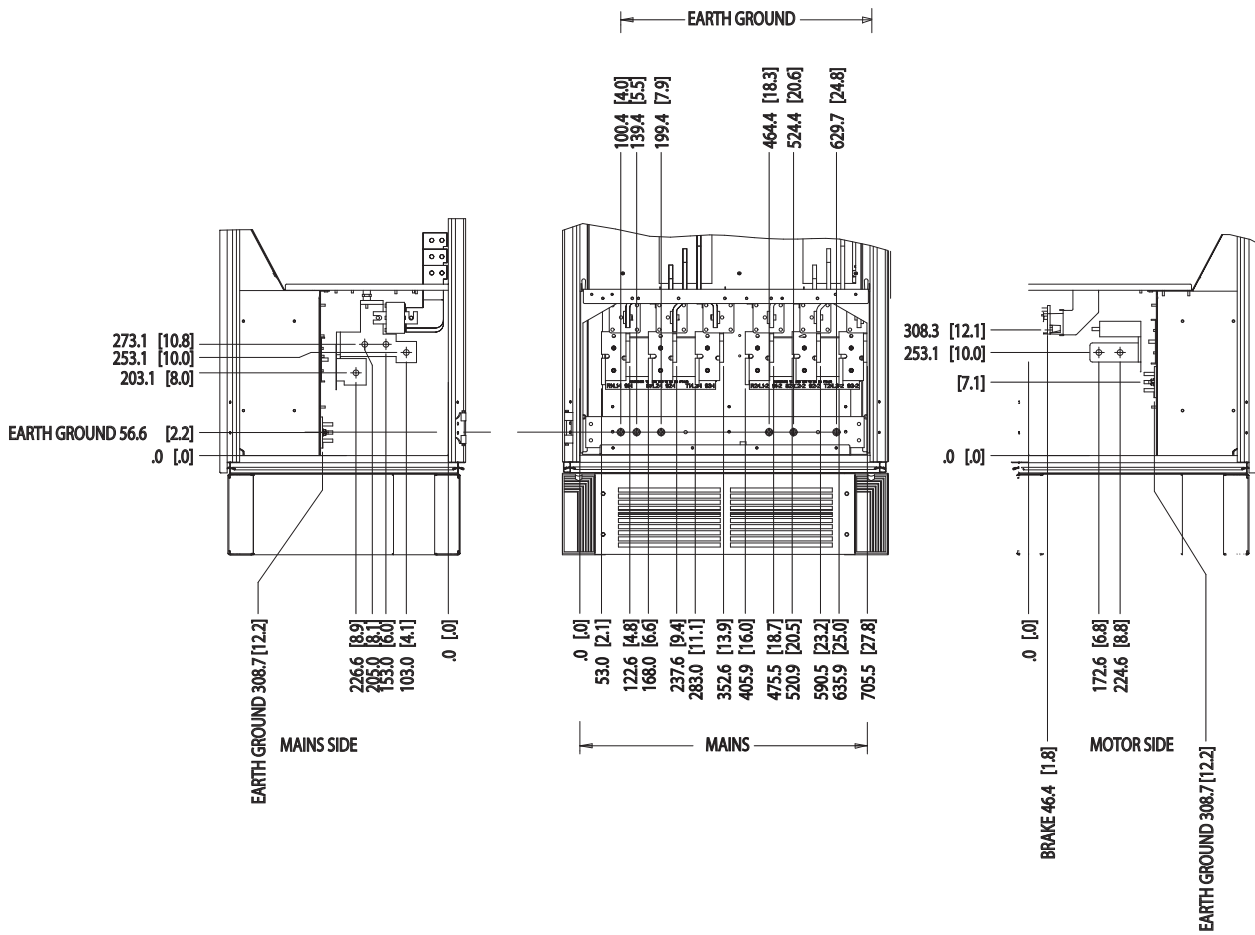
1308B534.11

Illustration 3.15 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views. The gland plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

- 1) Loadshare Terminal (-)
- 2) Ground bar
- 3) Loadshare Terminal (+)

3.2.4.6 Rectifier, Enclosure Size F14

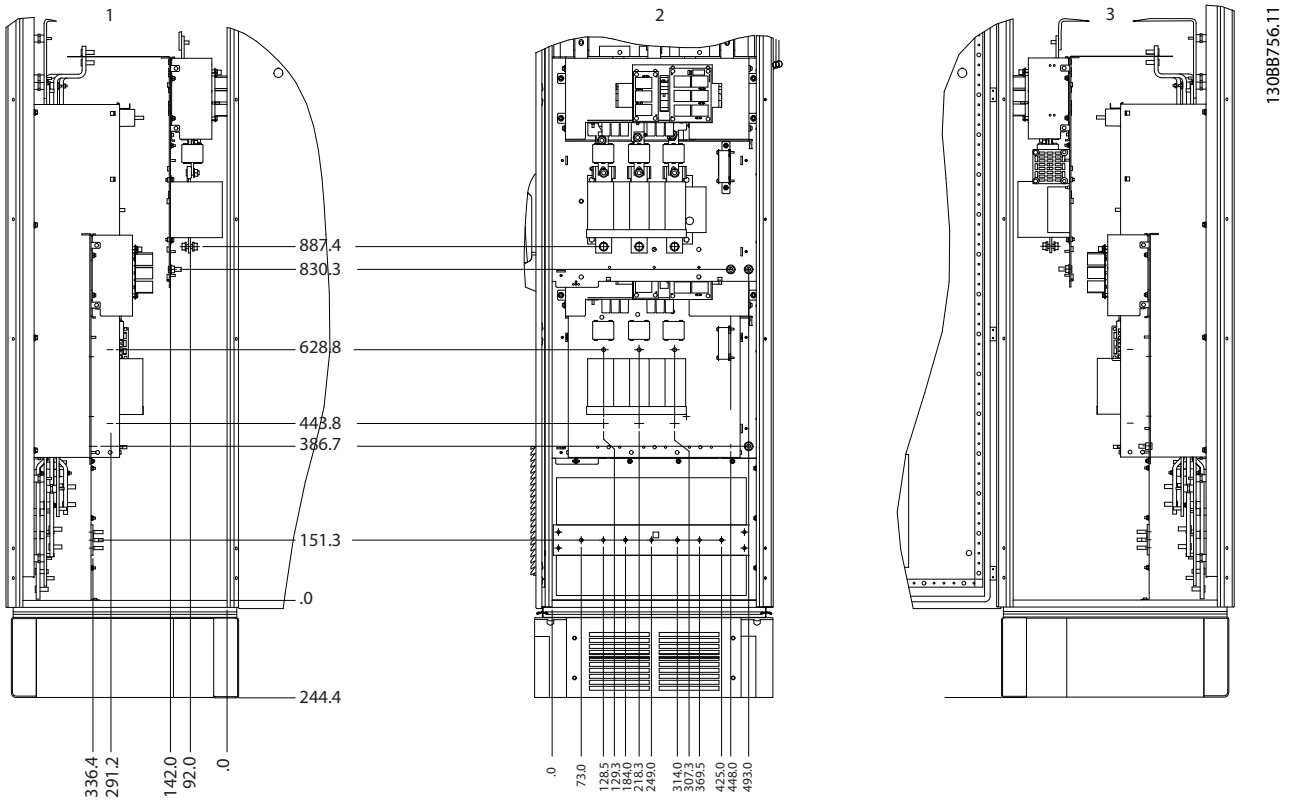
3



130BC146.10

Illustration 3.16 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views. The gland plate is 42 mm below .0 level.

3.2.4.7 Options Cabinet, Enclosure Size F9



3

Illustration 3.17 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views

### 3.2.4.8 Options Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F11/F13

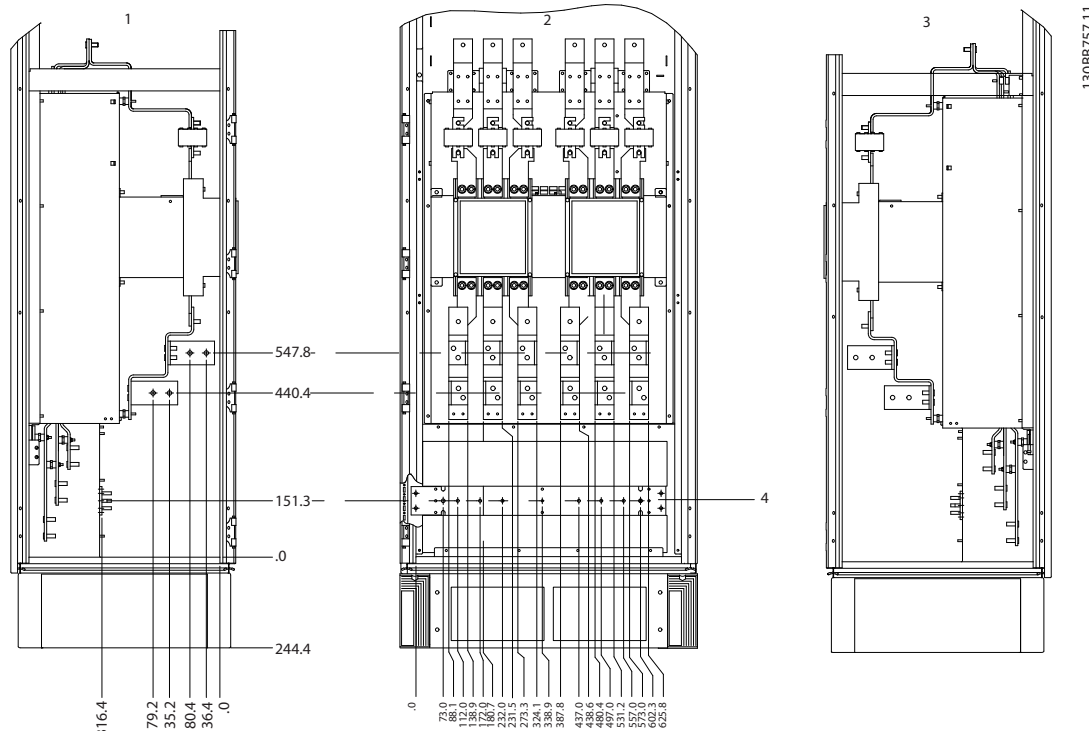


Illustration 3.18 Terminal Locations - Left, Front and Right Views

### 3.2.5 Cooling and Airflow

#### Cooling

Cooling can be achieved in different ways:

- By using the cooling ducts at the top and bottom of the unit.
- By taking air in and out the back of the unit.
- By combining the cooling methods.

#### Duct cooling

A dedicated option has been developed to optimise the installation of frequency converters in Rittal TS8 enclosures utilising the frequency converter fan for forced air cooling of the backchannel. The air out of the top of the enclosure could be ducted outside a facility so the heat losses from the backchannel are not dissipated within the control room. This ultimately reduces the air-conditioning requirements of the facility.

#### Back cooling

The backchannel air can also be ventilated in and out of the back of a Rittal TS8 enclosure. The backchannel takes cool air from outside the facility and returns warm air to outside the facility, thus reducing air-conditioning requirements.

#### Airflow

Ensure sufficient airflow over the heat sink. The flow rate is shown in Table 3.5.

| Enclosure protection | Door fan(s)/Top fan airflow      | Heat sink fan(s)                 |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| IP21/NEMA 1          | 700 m <sup>3</sup> /h (412 cfm)* | 985 m <sup>3</sup> /h (580 cfm)* |
| IP54/NEMA 12         | 525 m <sup>3</sup> /h (309 cfm)* | 985 m <sup>3</sup> /h (580 cfm)* |

Table 3.5 Heat Sink Air Flow

\* Airflow per fan. Enclosure sizes F contain multiple fans.

#### NOTICE

The fan runs for the following reasons:

- AMA
- DC Hold
- Pre-Mag
- DC Brake
- 60% of nominal current is exceeded.
- Specific heat sink temperature exceeded (power size dependent).

The fan runs for minimum 10 minutes.

#### External ducts

If additional duct work is added externally to the Rittal cabinet, calculate the pressure drop in the ducting. To derate the frequency converter according to the pressure drop, refer to Illustration 3.19.



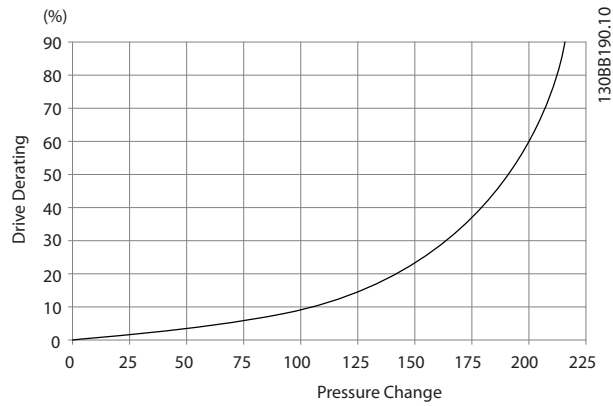


Illustration 3.19 Enclosure Size F, Derating vs. Pressure Change (Pa)

Drive air flow: 985 m<sup>3</sup>/h (580 cfm)

### 3.2.6 Gland/Conduit Entry - IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA12)

Cables are connected through the gland plate from the bottom. Remove the plate and plan where to place the entry for the glands or conduits. Prepare holes in the marked area on the drawings in *Table 3.6* and *Table 3.7*.

### NOTICE

Fit the gland plate to the frequency converter to ensure the specified protection degree, as well as ensuring proper cooling of the unit. If the gland plate is not mounted, the frequency converter may trip on Alarm 69, Pwr. Card Temp

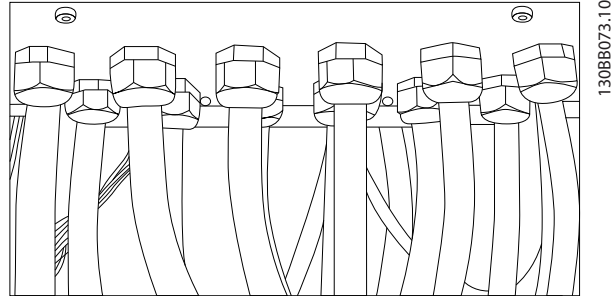
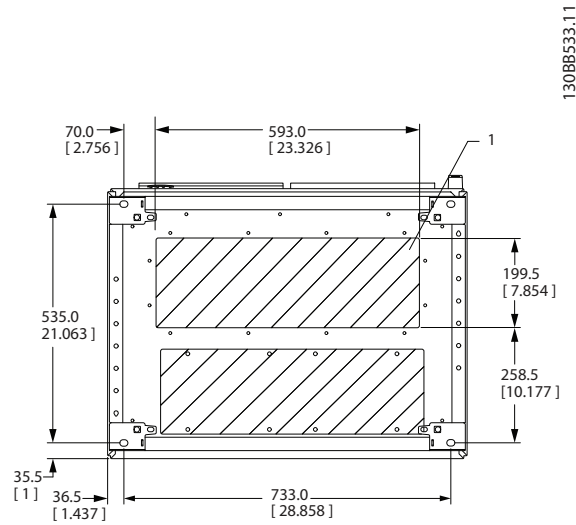
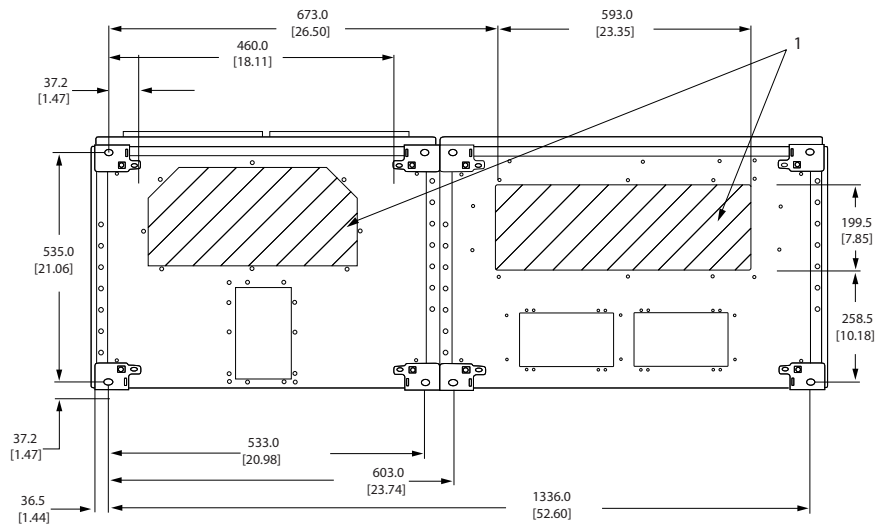


Illustration 3.20 Example of Proper Installation of the Gland Plate.

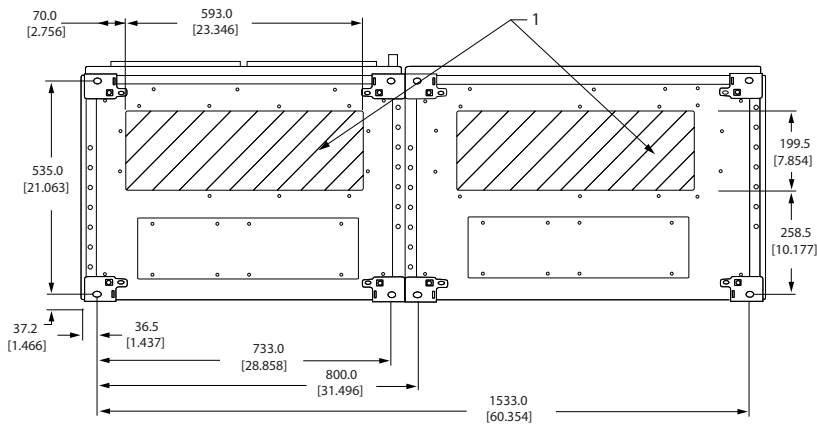
Enclosure Size F8



Enclosure Size F9



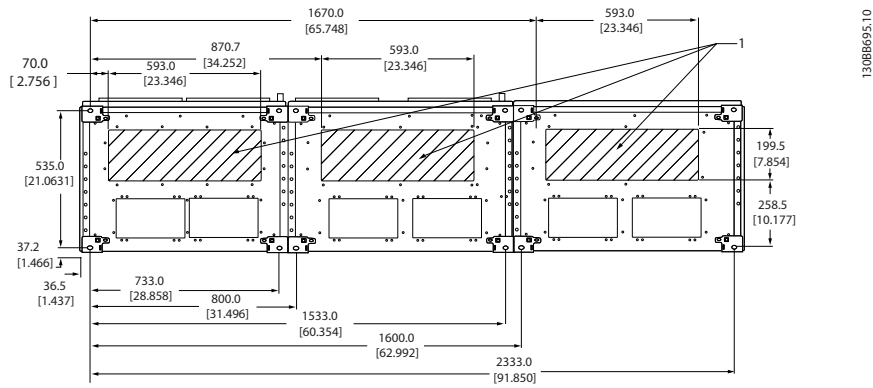
Enclosure Size F10



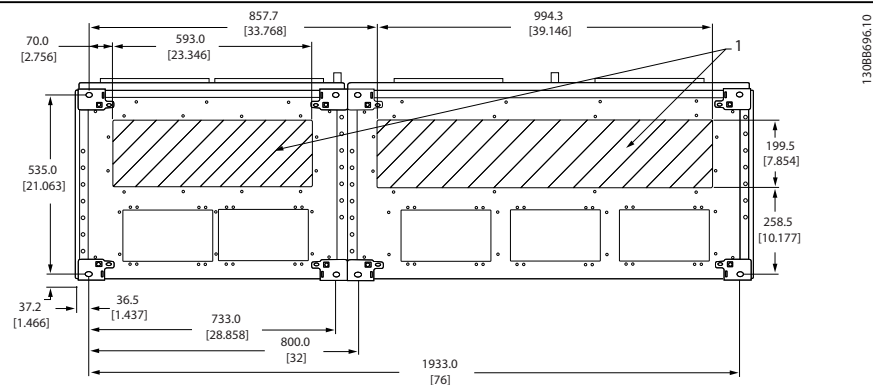
1 Place conduits in marked areas

Table 3.6 F8-F10: Cable Entries Viewed from the Bottom of the Frequency Converter

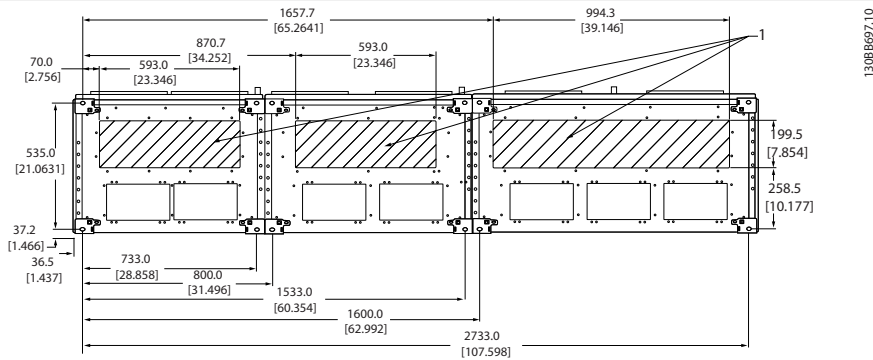
Enclosure Size F11



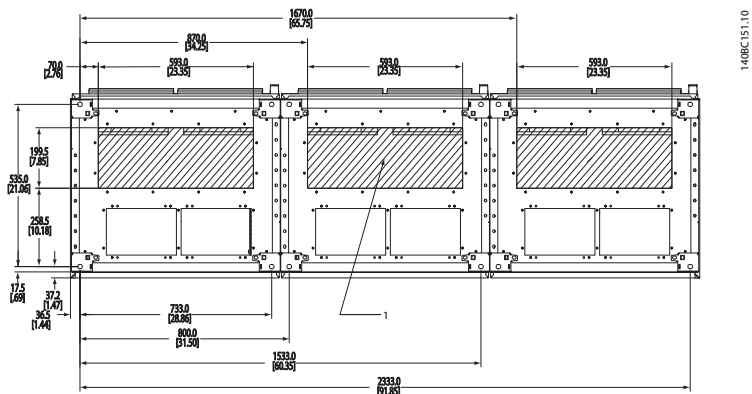
Enclosure Size F12



Enclosure Size F13



Enclosure Size F 14



1 Place conduits in marked areas

Table 3.7 F11-F14: Cable Entries Viewed from the Bottom of the Frequency Converter

### 3.3 Frame size F Panel Options

#### 3.3.1 Panel Options

##### Space heaters and thermostat

Space heaters are mounted on the cabinet interior of enclosure size F10-F14 frequency converters. They are controlled via an automatic thermostat, and help control humidity inside the enclosure, thereby extending the lifetime of frequency converter components in damp environments. The thermostat default settings turn on the heaters at 10 °C (50 °F) and turn them off at 15.6 °C (60 °F).

##### Cabinet light with power outlet

A light mounted on the cabinet interior of enclosure size F10-F14 frequency converters increases visibility during servicing and maintenance. The housing light includes a power outlet for temporarily powering tools or other devices, available in 2 voltages:

- 230 V, 50 Hz, 2.5 A, CE/ENEC
- 120 V, 60 Hz, 5 A, UL/cUL

##### Transformer tap set-up

If the cabinet light and outlet, and/or the space heaters and thermostat are installed, transformer T1 requires the taps to be set to the proper input voltage. A 380-480/500 V unit is initially set to the 525 V tap and a 525-690 V unit is set to the 690 V tap. This ensures that no overvoltage of secondary equipment occurs if the tap is not changed before power is applied. See *Table 3.8* to set the proper tap at terminal T1, located in the rectifier cabinet. For location in the frequency converter, see the illustration of the rectifier in *Illustration 4.1*.

| Input voltage range [V] | Tap to select [V] |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 380-440                 | 400               |
| 441-490                 | 460               |
| 491-550                 | 525               |
| 551-625                 | 575               |
| 626-660                 | 660               |
| 661-690                 | 690               |

Table 3.8 Transformer Tap Setting

##### NAMUR terminals

NAMUR is an international association of automation technology users in the process industries, primarily chemical and pharmaceutical industries in Germany. Selection of this option provides terminals organised and labeled to the specifications of the NAMUR standard for frequency converter input and output terminals. This requires an MCB 112 PTC Thermistor Card and an MCB 113 Extended Relay Card.

##### RCD (residual current device)

Uses the core balance method to monitor ground fault currents in grounded and high-resistance grounded systems (TN and TT systems in IEC terminology). There is a pre-warning (50% of main alarm setpoint) and a main

alarm setpoint. Associated with each setpoint is an SPDT alarm relay for external use. Requires an external *window-type* current transformer (not supplied).

- Integrated into the frequency converter's safe-stop circuit.
- IEC 60755 Type B device monitors AC, pulsed DC, and pure DC ground fault currents.
- LED bar graph indicator of the ground fault current level from 10-100% of the setpoint.
- Fault memory
- TEST/RESET button

##### IRM (insulation resistance monitor)

Monitors the insulation resistance in ungrounded systems (IT systems in IEC terminology) between the system phase conductors and ground. There is an ohmic pre-warning and a main alarm setpoint for the insulation level. Associated with each setpoint is an SPDT alarm relay for external use.

#### **NOTICE**

**Only one insulation resistance monitor can be connected to each ungrounded (IT) system.**

- Integrated into the frequency converter's safe-stop circuit.
- LCD display of the ohmic value of the insulation resistance.
- Fault Memory
- [Info], [Test], and [Reset] keys

##### Manual motor starters

Provide 3-phase power for electric blowers often required for larger motors. Power for the starters is provided from the load side of any supplied contactor, circuit breaker, or disconnect switch. Power is fused before each motor starter and is off when the incoming power to the frequency converter is off. Up to 2 starters are allowed (only 1 if a 30 A, fuse-protected circuit is ordered). The manual motor starter is integrated into the frequency converter's STO and includes the following features:

- Operation switch (on/off)
- Short-circuit and overload protection with test function
- Manual reset function

**30 Amp, fuse-protected terminals**

- 3-phase power matching incoming mains voltage for powering auxiliary customer equipment.
- Not available if 2 manual motor starters are selected.
- Terminals are off when the incoming power to the frequency converter is off.
- Power for the fused protected terminals is provided from the load side of any supplied circuit breaker or disconnect switch.

**24 V DC power supply**

- 5 A, 120 W, 24 V DC
- Protected against output overcurrent, overload, short circuits, and overtemperature.
- For powering 3rd party accessory devices such as sensors, PLC I/O, contactors, temperature probes, indicator lights, and/or other electronic hardware.
- Diagnostics include a dry DC-ok contact, a green DC-ok LED, and a red overload LED.

**External temperature monitoring**

Designed for monitoring temperatures of external system components, such as the motor windings and/or bearings. Includes 8 universal input modules plus 2 dedicated thermistor input modules. All 10 modules are integrated into the frequency converter's STO circuit and can be monitored via a fieldbus network (requires a separate module/bus coupler).

**Universal inputs (8) - signal types**

- RTD inputs (including Pt100), 3-wire or 4-wire
- Thermocoupler
- Analog current or analog voltage

Additional features:

- 1 universal output, configurable for analog voltage or analog current.
- 2 output relays (N.O.)
- Dual-line LC display and LED diagnostics
- Sensor lead wire break, short-circuit, and incorrect polarity detection
- Interface set-up software

**Dedicated thermistor inputs (2) - features**

- Each module is capable of monitoring up to 6 thermistors in series.
- Fault diagnostics for wire breakage or short-circuits of sensor leads.
- ATEX/UL/CSA certification
- A 3rd thermistor input can be provided by the PTC Thermistor Option Card MCB 112, if necessary.

## 4 Electrical Installation

### 4.1 Electrical Installation

#### 4.1.1 Power Connections

# 4

##### Cabling and Fusing

##### **NOTICE**

##### Cables General

All cabling must comply with national and local regulations on cable cross-sections and ambient temperature. UL applications require 75 °C copper conductors. 75 °C and 90 °C copper conductors are thermally acceptable for the frequency converter to use in non UL applications.

The power cable connections are located as in *Illustration 4.1*. Dimensioning of the cable cross-section must be done in accordance with the current ratings and local legislation. See *chapter 7.1 General Specifications* for details.

For protection of the frequency converter, use the recommended fuses, or ensure that the unit has built-in fuses. Recommended fuses are detailed in *chapter 4.1.12 Fuses*. Always ensure that fusing conforms to local regulations.

The mains connection is fitted to the mains switch if this is included.

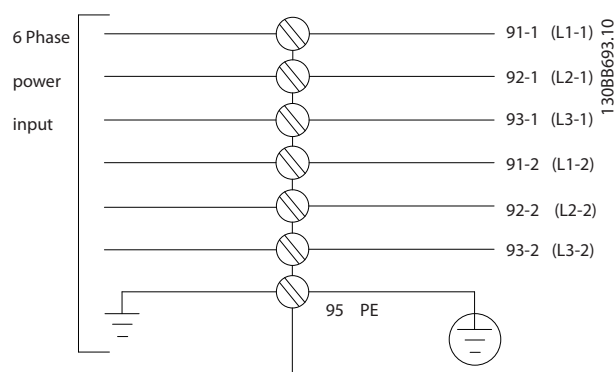


Illustration 4.1 Power Cable Connections

**NOTICE**

If an unshielded/unarmoured cable is used, some EMC requirements are not complied with. Use a shielded/armoured motor cable to comply with EMC emission specifications. For more information, see *EMC Specifications* in the product relevant *design guide*.

See *chapter 7.1 General Specifications* for the correct dimensioning of the motor cable cross-section and length.

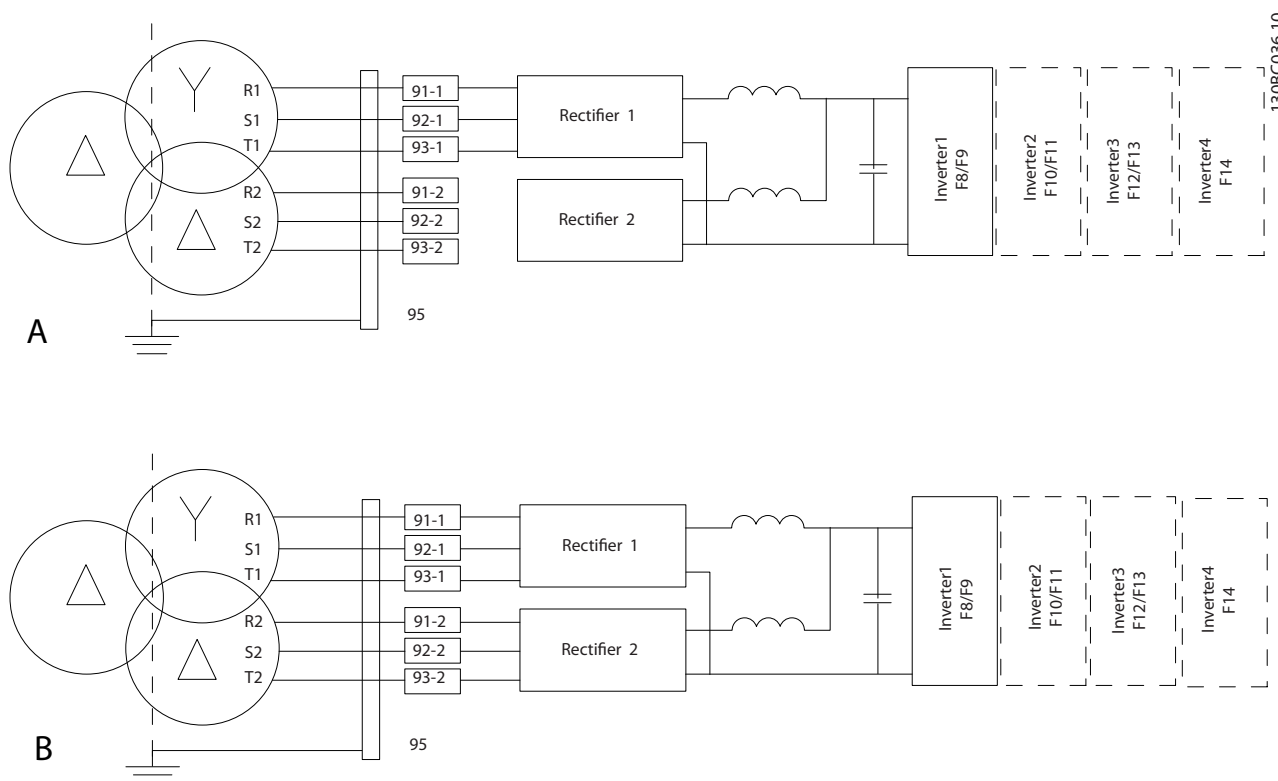


Illustration 4.2 A) Modified 6-Pulse Connection<sup>1), 2), 3)</sup>

B) 12-Pulse Connection<sup>2), 4)</sup>

**Notes**

- 1) 6-pulse connection eliminates the harmonics reduction benefits of the 12-pulse rectifier.
- 2) Suitable for IT and TN mains connection.
- 3) In the unlikely event that 1 of the 6-pulse modular rectifiers becomes inoperable, it is possible to operate the frequency converter at reduced load with a single 6-pulse rectifier. Contact Danfoss for reconnection details.
- 4) No paralleling of mains cabling is shown here.

**Screening of cables**

Avoid installation with twisted screen ends (pigtails). They spoil the screening effect at higher frequencies. If it is necessary to break the screen to install a motor isolator or motor contactor, the screen must be continued at the lowest possible HF impedance.

Connect the motor cable screen to both the decoupling plate of the frequency converter and to the metal housing of the motor.

Make the screen connections with the largest possible surface area (cable clamp). This is done by using the supplied installation devices within the frequency converter.

**Cable length and cross-section**

The frequency converter has been EMC tested with a given cable length. Keep the motor cable as short as possible to reduce the noise level and leakage currents.

**Switching frequency**

When frequency converters are used with sine-wave filters to reduce the acoustic noise from a motor, set the switching frequency according to the instruction in 14-01 Switching Frequency.

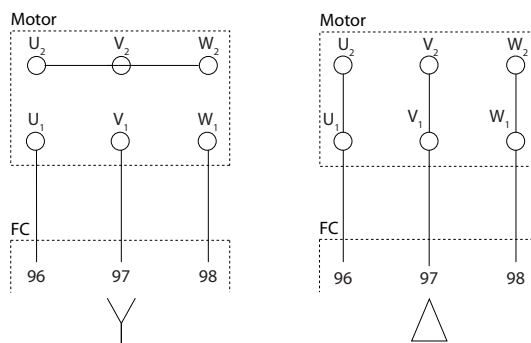


Illustration 4.3 Star and Delta Connections

| Term. no. |    |    |                  |   |
|-----------|----|----|------------------|---|
| 96        | 97 | 98 | 99               |   |
| U         | V  | W  | PE <sup>1)</sup> | Motor voltage 0-100% of mains voltage.<br>3 wires out of motor              |
| U1        | V1 | W1 | PE <sup>1)</sup> | Delta-connected<br>6 wires out of motor                                     |
| W2        | U2 | V2 |                  |   |
| U1        | V1 | W1 | PE <sup>1)</sup> | Star-connected U2, V2, W2<br>U2, V2 and W2 to be interconnected separately. |

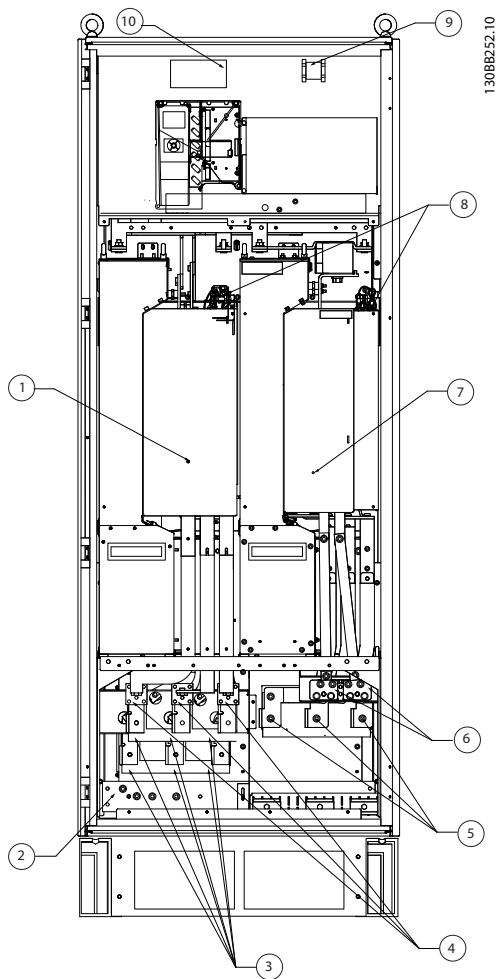
Table 4.1 Terminal Connections

1) Protective Earth Connection

**NOTICE**

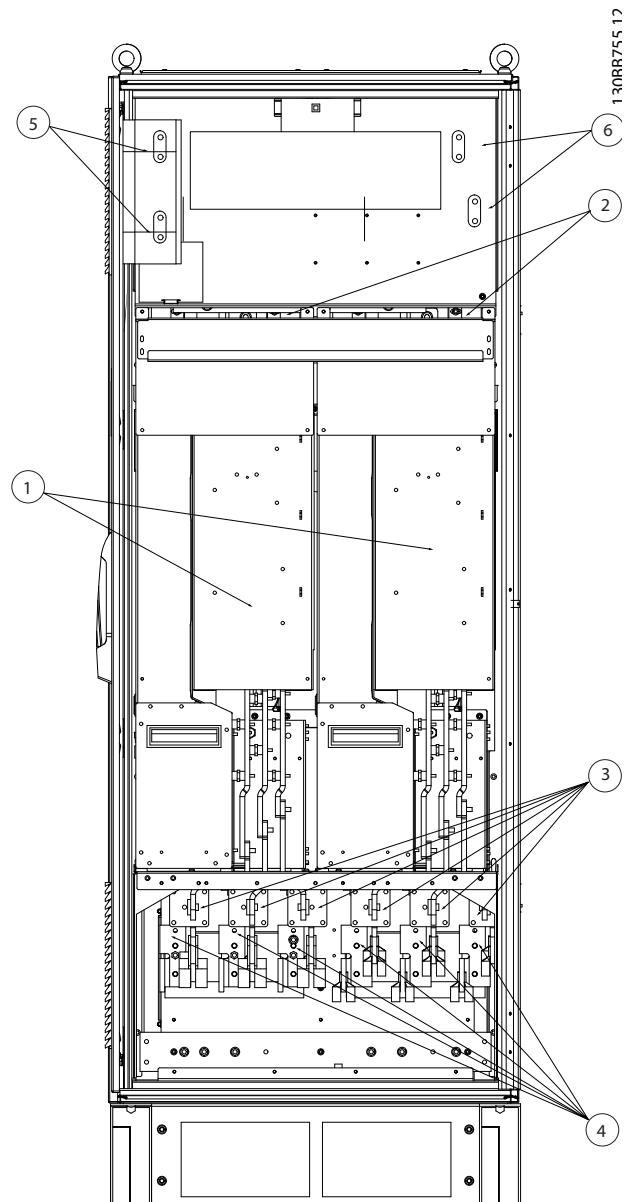
In motors without phase insulation paper or other insulation reinforcement suitable for operation with voltage supply (such as a frequency converter), fit a sine-wave filter on the output of the frequency converter.





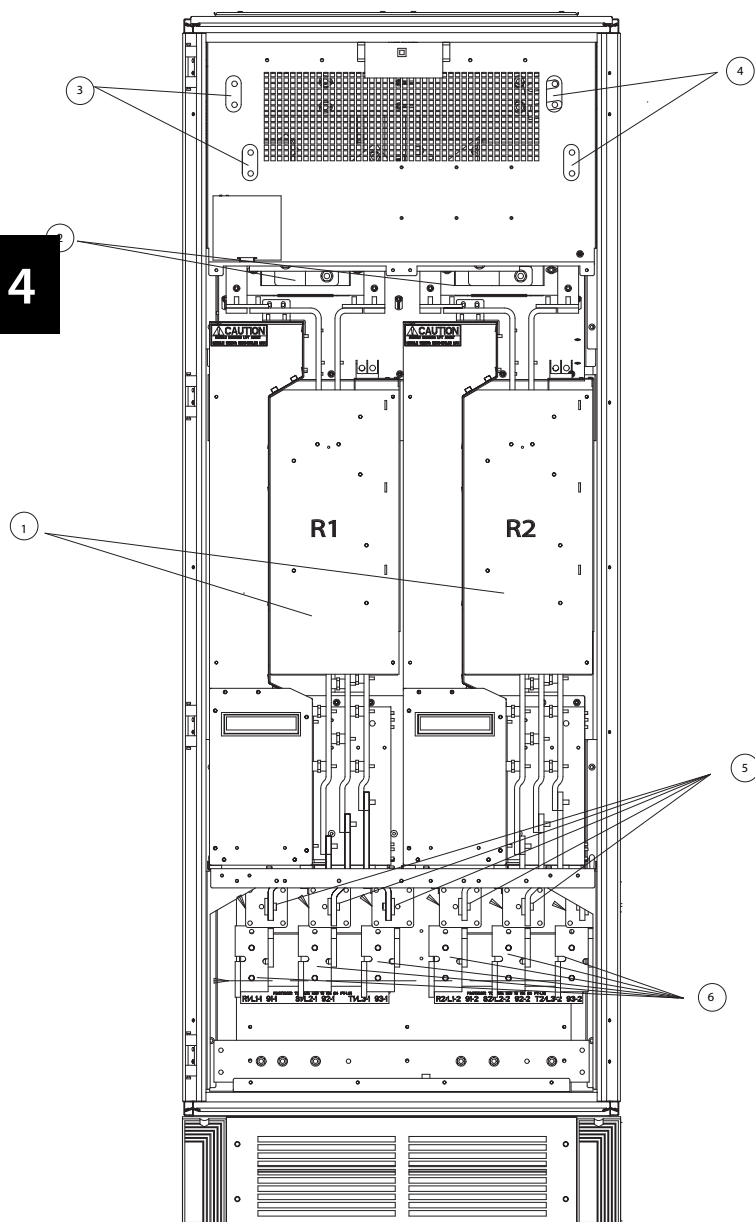
|    |                           |      |      |         |    |    |
|----|---------------------------|------|------|---------|----|----|
| 1  | 12-pulse rectifier module |      |      |         |    |    |
| 2  | Ground/earth PE terminals |      |      |         |    |    |
| 3  | Mains/fuses               |      |      |         |    |    |
|    | R1                        | S1   | T1   |         |    |    |
|    | L1-1                      | L2-1 | L3-1 |         |    |    |
| 4  | Mains/fuses               |      |      |         |    |    |
|    | R2                        | S2   | T2   |         |    |    |
|    | L2-1                      | L2-2 | L3-2 |         |    |    |
| 5  | Motor connection          |      |      |         |    |    |
|    | U                         | V    | W    |         |    |    |
|    | T1                        | T2   | T3   |         |    |    |
|    | 96                        | 97   | 98   |         |    |    |
| 6  | Brake terminals           |      |      |         |    |    |
|    | -R                        | +R   |      |         |    |    |
|    | 81                        | 82   |      |         |    |    |
| 7  | Inverter module           |      |      |         |    |    |
| 8  | SCR enable/disable        |      |      |         |    |    |
| 9  | Relay 1                   |      |      | Relay 2 |    |    |
|    | 01                        | 02   | 03   | 04      | 05 | 06 |
| 10 | Auxillary fan             |      |      |         |    |    |
|    | 104                       | 106  |      |         |    |    |

Illustration 4.4 Rectifier and Inverter Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F8 and F9



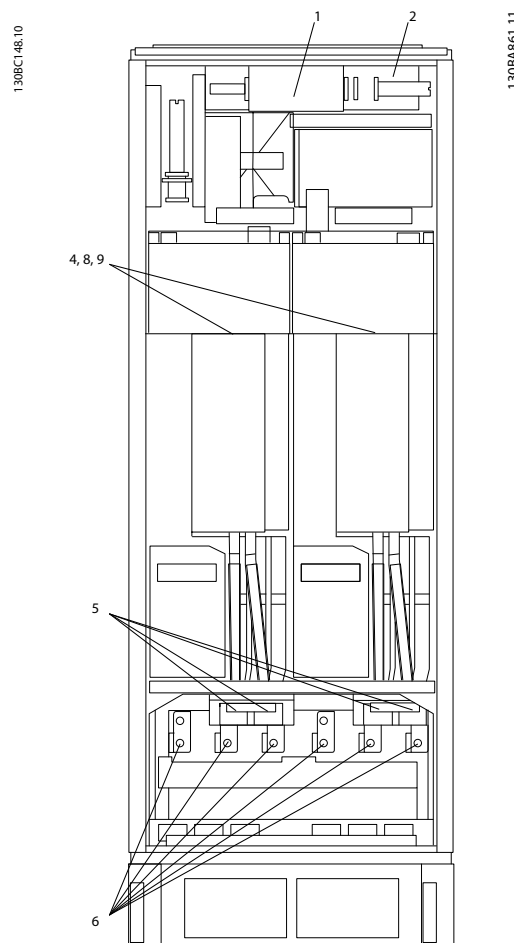
|   |                                      |      |      |      |      |      |
|---|--------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1 | 12-pulse rectifier module            |      |      |      |      |      |
| 2 | AUX fan                              |      |      |      |      |      |
|   | 100                                  | 101  | 102  | 103  |      |      |
| 3 | Mains fuses F10/F12 (6 pieces)       |      |      |      |      |      |
|   | L1                                   | L2   | L1   | L2   |      |      |
| 4 | Mains                                |      |      |      |      |      |
|   | R1                                   | S1   | T1   | R2   | S2   | T2   |
|   | L1-1                                 | L2-1 | L3-1 | L1-2 | L2-2 | L3-2 |
| 5 | DC bus connections for common DC bus |      |      |      |      |      |
|   | DC+                                  | DC-  |      |      |      |      |
| 6 | DC bus connections for common DC bus |      |      |      |      |      |
|   | DC+                                  | DC-  |      |      |      |      |

Illustration 4.5 Rectifier Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F10 and F12



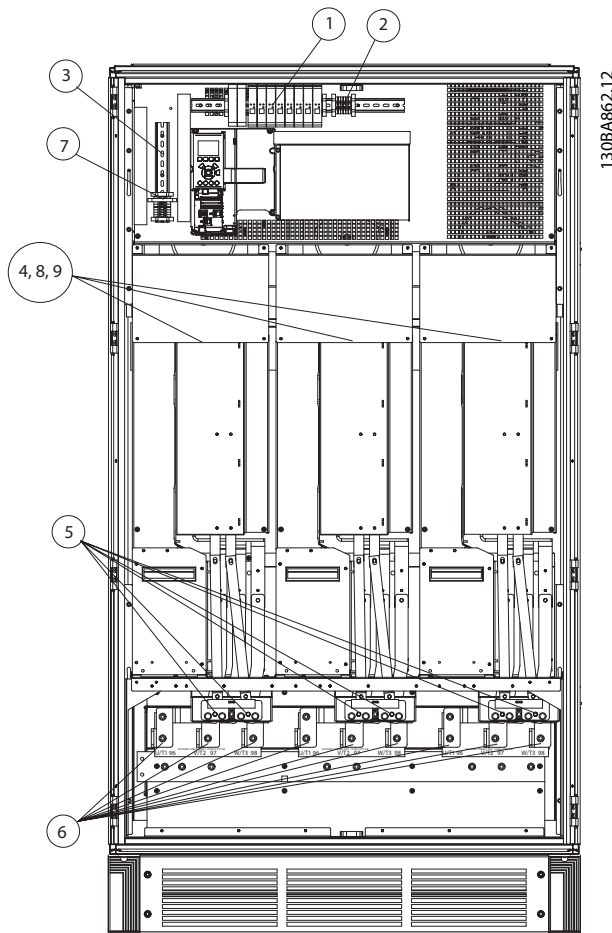
|   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1 | 12-pulse rectifier modules     |
| 2 | N/A                            |
| 3 | DC busbar access               |
| 4 | DC busbar access               |
|   | 100 101 102 103<br>L1 L2 L1 L2 |
| 5 | Mains fuses (6 pieces)         |
|   | -R +R                          |
|   | 81 82                          |
| 6 | Mains                          |
|   | R1 S1 T1 R2 S2 T2              |
|   | L1-1 L2-1 L3-1 L1-2 L2-2 L3-2  |

Illustration 4.6 Rectifier Cabinet, Enclosure Size F14

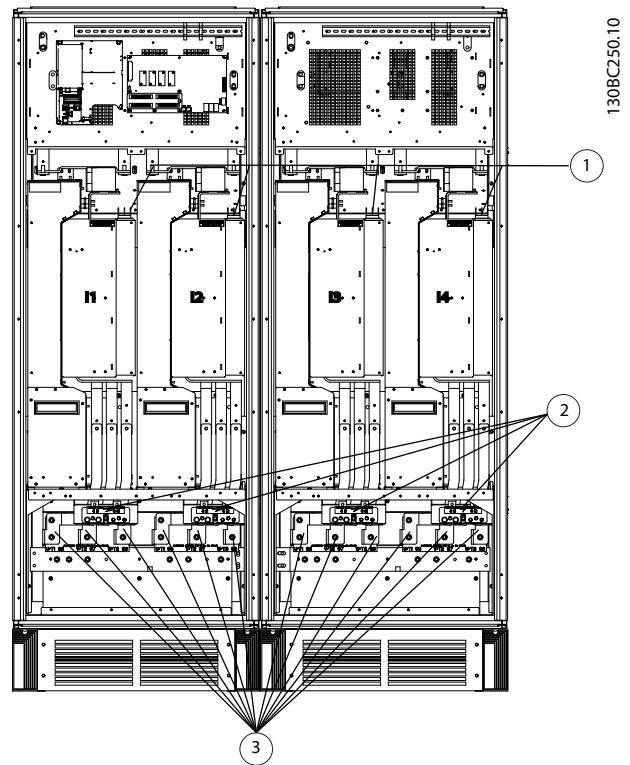


|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | External temperature monitoring              |
| 2 | AUX relay                                    |
|   | 01 02 03<br>04 05 06                         |
| 3 | NAMUR  |
| 4 | AUX fan                                      |
|   | 100 101 102 103<br>L1 L2 L1 L2               |
| 5 | Brake  |
|   | -R +R<br>81 82                               |
| 6 | Motor  |
|   | U V W<br>96 97 98                            |
|   | T1 T2 T3                                     |
| 7 | NAMUR fuse. See Table 4.16 for part numbers. |
| 8 | Fan fuses. See Table 4.13 for part numbers.  |
| 9 | SMPS fuses. See Table 4.12 for part numbers. |

Illustration 4.7 Inverter Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F10 and F11



130BA862.12



130BC250.10

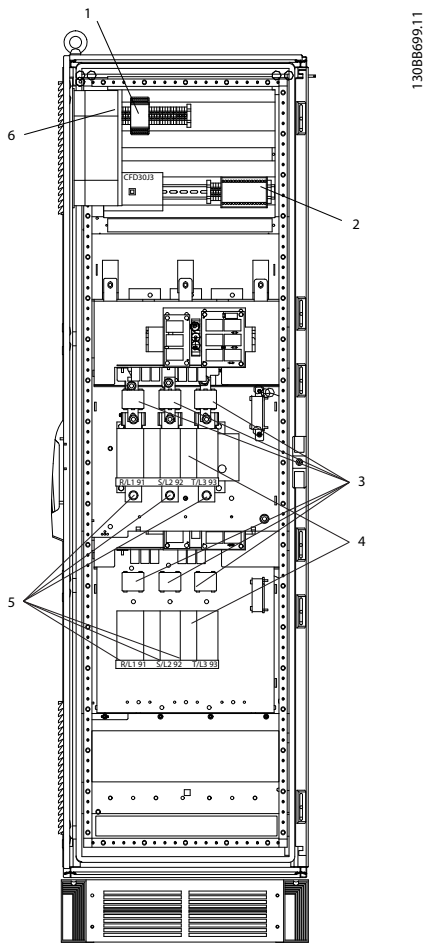
4

|   |  |     |     |     |
|---|--|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 | External temperature monitoring              |     |     |     |
| 2 | AUX relay                                    |     |     |     |
|   | 01   | 02  | 03  |     |
| 3 | 04   | 05  | 06  |     |
|   | NAMUR  |     |     |     |
| 4 | AUX fan                                      |     |     |     |
|   | 100  | 101 | 102 | 103 |
| 5 | L1   | L2  | L1  | L2  |
|   | Brake  |     |     |     |
| 6 | -R   | +R  |     |     |
|   | 81   | 82  |     |     |
| 7 | Motor  |     |     |     |
|   | U  | V   | W   |     |
|   | 96   | 97  | 98  |     |
|   | T1   | T2  | T3  |     |
| 8 | NAMUR fuse. See Table 4.16 for part numbers. |     |     |     |
| 9 | Fan fuses. See Table 4.13 for part numbers.  |     |     |     |
| 9 | SMPS fuses. See Table 4.12 for part numbers. |     |     |     |

|   |         |     |     |     |
|---|---------|-----|-----|-----|
| 4 | AUX fan |     |     |     |
|   | 100     | 101 | 102 | 103 |
| 5 | L1      | L2  | L1  | L2  |
|   | Brake   |     |     |     |
| 6 | -R      | +R  |     |     |
|   | 81      | 82  |     |     |
| 7 | Motor   |     |     |     |
|   | U       | V   | W   |     |
|   | 96      | 97  | 98  |     |
|   | T1      | T2  | T3  |     |

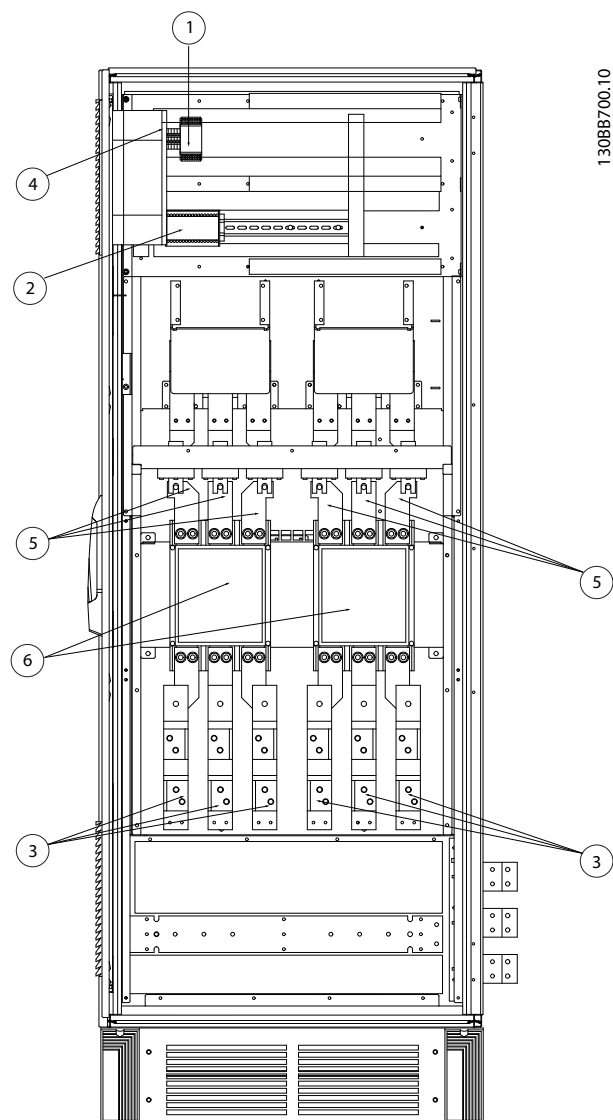
Illustration 4.9 Inverter Cabinet, Enclosure Size F14

Illustration 4.8 Inverter Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F12 and F13



|   |  |      |      |      |      |      |
|---|--|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1 | Pilz relay terminal                              |      |      |      |      |      |
| 2 | RCD or IRM terminal                              |      |      |      |      |      |
| 3 | Mains/6-phase                                    |      |      |      |      |      |
|   | R1   | S1   | T1   | R2   | S2   | T2   |
|   | 91-1   | 92-1 | 93-1 | 91-2 | 92-2 | 93-2 |
|   | L1-1   | L2-1 | L3-1 | L1-2 | L2-2 | L3-2 |
| 4 | Safety relay coil fuse with Pilz relay           |      |      |      |      |      |
|   | See chapter 4.1.13 Fuse Tables for part numbers. |      |      |      |      |      |
| 5 | Mains fuses, (6 pieces)                          |      |      |      |      |      |
|   | See chapter 4.1.13 Fuse Tables for part numbers. |      |      |      |      |      |
| 6 | 2x3-phase manual disconnect                      |      |      |      |      |      |

Illustration 4.10 Options Cabinet, Enclosure Size F9



|   |  |      |      |      |      |      |
|---|--|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1 | Pilz relay terminal                              |      |      |      |      |      |
| 2 | RCD or IRM terminal                              |      |      |      |      |      |
| 3 | Mains/6-phase                                    |      |      |      |      |      |
|   | R1   | S1   | T1   | R2   | S2   | T2   |
|   | 91-1   | 92-1 | 93-1 | 91-2 | 92-2 | 93-2 |
|   | L1-1   | L2-1 | L3-1 | L1-2 | L2-2 | L3-2 |
| 4 | Safety relay coil fuse with Pilz relay           |      |      |      |      |      |
|   | See chapter 4.1.13 Fuse Tables for part numbers. |      |      |      |      |      |
| 5 | Mains fuses, (6 pieces)                          |      |      |      |      |      |
|   | See chapter 4.1.13 Fuse Tables for part numbers. |      |      |      |      |      |
| 6 | 2x3-phase manual disconnect                      |      |      |      |      |      |

Illustration 4.11 Options Cabinet, Enclosure Sizes F11 and F13

### 4.1.2 Grounding

To obtain electromagnetic compatibility (EMC), consider the following basic issues when installing a frequency converter.

- Safety grounding: The frequency converter has a high leakage current (> 3.5 mA) and must be grounded appropriately for safety reasons. Apply local safety regulations.
- High-frequency grounding: Keep the ground wire connections as short as possible.

Connect the different ground systems at the lowest possible conductor impedance. This is obtained by keeping the conductor as short as possible and by using the greatest possible surface area.

The metal cabinets of the different devices are mounted on the cabinet rear plate using the lowest possible High-frequency impedance. This avoids having different High-frequency voltages for the individual devices and avoids the risk of radio interference currents running in any connection cables used between the devices. The radio interference has been reduced.

To obtain a low High-frequency impedance, use the fastening bolts of the devices as High-frequency connection to the rear plate. Remove any insulating paint or similar from the fastening points.

### 4.1.3 Extra Protection (RCD)

If local safety regulations are complied with, ELCB relays, multiple protective earthing or grounding can be used as extra protection.

A ground fault may cause a DC component to develop in the fault current.

If ELCB relays are used, observe local regulations. Relays must be suitable for the protection of 3-phase equipment with a bridge rectifier and for a brief discharge on power-up.

See also *Special Conditions* in the product relevant *design guide*.

### 4.1.4 RFI Switch

#### Mains supply isolated from ground

Turn off (OFF)<sup>1)</sup> the RFI switch via *14-50 RFI Filter* on the frequency converter and *14-50 RFI Filter* on the filter if:

- The frequency converter is supplied from an isolated mains source (IT mains, floating delta and grounded delta).
- The frequency converter is supplied from TT/TN-S mains with grounded leg.

For further reference, see IEC 364-3.

Set *14-50 RFI Filter* to [ON] if:

- Optimum EMC performance is needed.
- Parallel motors are connected.
- The motor cable length is above 25 m.

<sup>1)</sup> Not available for 525-600/690 V frequency converters.

In OFF, the internal RFI capacities (filter capacitors) between the chassis and the intermediate circuit are cut off to avoid damage to the intermediate circuit and to reduce the ground capacity currents (according to IEC 61800-3).

Also refer to the application note *VLT on IT mains*. It is important to use isolation monitors which are compatible with power electronics (IEC 61557-8).

### 4.1.5 Torque

When tightening all electrical connections, it is important to tighten with the correct torque. Too low or too high torque results in a poor electrical connection. Use a torque wrench to ensure correct torque.

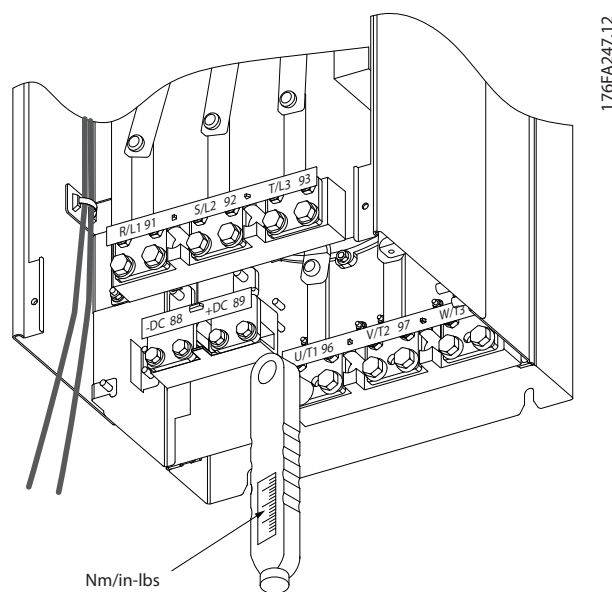


Illustration 4.12 Tightening Torques.

| Enclosure size | Terminal    | Torque                         | Bolt size |
|----------------|-------------|--------------------------------|-----------|
| F8-F14         | Mains Motor | 19-40 Nm<br>(168-354 in-lbs)   | M10       |
|                | Brake Regen | 8.5-20.5 Nm<br>(75-181 in-lbs) | M8        |

Table 4.2 Tightening Torques

### 4.1.6 Screened Cables

#### **WARNING**

Danfoss recommends using screened cables between the LCL filter and the frequency converter. Unshielded cables can be used between transformer and LCL filter input side.

4

It is important that screened and armoured cables are connected in a proper way to ensure high EMC immunity and low emissions.

The connection can be made using either cable glands or clamps.

- EMC cable glands: Available cable glands can be used to ensure an optimum EMC connection.
- EMC cable clamp: Clamps allowing easy connection are supplied with the frequency converter.

### 4.1.7 Motor Cable

Connect the motor to terminals U/T1/96, V/T2/97, W/T3/98. Ground to terminal 99. All types of 3-phase asynchronous standard motors can be used with a frequency converter. The factory setting is for clockwise rotation with the frequency converter output connected as follows:

| Terminal Number | Function               |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| 96, 97, 98      | Mains U/T1, V/T2, W/T3 |
| 99              | Ground                 |

Table 4.3 Motor Connection Terminals

- Terminal U/T1/96 connected to U-phase.
- Terminal V/T2/97 connected to V-phase.
- Terminal W/T3/98 connected to W-phase.

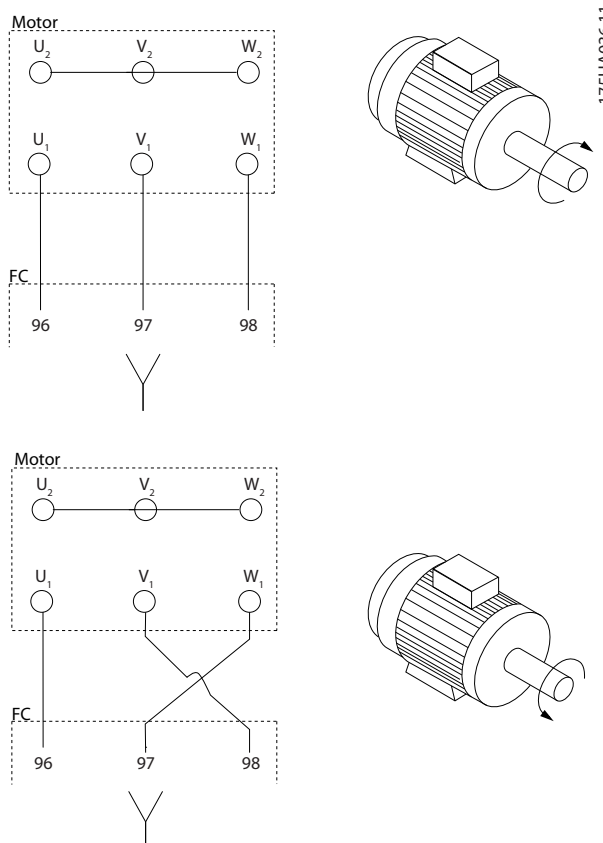


Illustration 4.13 Wiring for Clockwise and Counterclockwise Motor Rotation

The direction of rotation can be changed by switching 2 phases in the motor cable or by changing the setting of 4-10 Motor Speed Direction.

A motor rotation check can be performed using parameter 1-28 Motor Rotation Check and following the steps shown on the display.

#### Requirements

**F8/F9 requirements:** The cables must be of equal length within 10% between the inverter module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

**F10/F11 requirements:** Motor phase cable quantities must be multiples of 2, resulting in 2, 4, 6, or 8 (1 cable is not allowed) to obtain equal amount of wires attached to both inverter module terminals. The cables must be equal length within 10% between the inverter module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

**F12/F13 requirements:** Motor phase cable quantities must be multiples of 3, resulting in 3, 6, 9, or 12 (1, 2, or 3 cables are not allowed) to obtain an equal amount of wires attached to each inverter module terminal. The wires must be of equal length within 10% between the inverter

module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

**F14 requirements:** Motor phase cable quantities must be multiples of 4, resulting in 4, 8, 12, or 16 (1, 2, or 3 cables are not allowed) to obtain an equal amount of wires attached to each inverter module terminal. The wires must be of equal length within 10% between the inverter module terminals and the first common point of a phase. The recommended common point is the motor terminals.

**Output junction box requirements:** The length, minimum 2.5 m, and quantity of cables must be equal from each inverter module to the common terminal in the junction box.

**NOTICE**

If a retrofit application requires an unequal amount of wires per phase, consult Danfoss for requirements and documentation, or use the top/bottom entry side cabinet option.

**4.1.8 Brake Cable for Frequency Converters with Factory-installed Brake Chopper Option**

(Only standard with letter B in position 18 of product type code).

Use a screened connection cable to the brake resistor. The maximum length from the frequency converter to the DC bar is limited to 25 m (82 ft).

| Terminal number | Function                 |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 81, 82          | Brake resistor terminals |

Table 4.4 Brake Resistor Terminals

The connection cable to the brake resistor must be screened. Connect the screen to the conductive back plate on the frequency converter and to the metal cabinet of the brake resistor with cable clamps.

Size the brake cable cross-section to match the brake torque. See also the Instructions *Brake Resistor* and *Brake Resistors for Horizontal Applications* for further information regarding safe installation.

**NOTICE**

Depending on the supply voltage, voltages up to 1099 V DC may occur on the terminals.

**F enclosure requirements**

Connect the brake resistor to the brake terminals in each inverter module.

**4.1.9 Shielding against Electrical Noise**

Before mounting the mains power cable, mount the EMC metal cover to ensure best EMC performance.

**NOTICE**

The EMC metal cover is only included in frequency converters with an RFI filter.

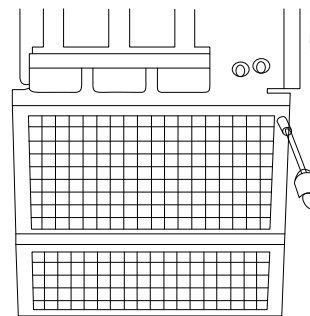


Illustration 4.14 Mounting of EMC shield.

**4.1.10 Mains Connection**

Mains and ground must be connected as detailed in Table 4.5.

| Terminal number  | Function                        |
|------------------|---------------------------------|
| 91-1, 92-1, 93-1 | Mains R1/L1-1, S1/L2-1, T1/L3-1 |
| 91-2, 92-2, 93-2 | Mains R2/L1-2, S2/L2-2, T2/L3-2 |
| 94               | Ground                          |

Table 4.5 Mains and Ground Connection Terminals

**NOTICE**

Check the nameplate to ensure that the mains voltage of the frequency converter matches the power supply of the plant.

Ensure that the power supply can supply the necessary current to the frequency converter.

If the frequency converter is without built-in fuses, ensure that the appropriate fuses have the correct current rating.

### 4.1.11 External Fan Supply

In case the frequency converter is supplied by DC, or if the fan must run independently of the power supply, an external power supply can be applied. The connection is made on the power card.

| Terminal number | Function              |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 100, 101        | Auxiliary supply S, T |
| 102, 103        | Internal supply S, T  |

Table 4.6 External Fan Supply Terminals

The connector located on the power card provides the connection of line voltage for the cooling fans. The fans are connected from factory to be supplied from a common AC line (jumpers between 100-102 and 101-103). If an external supply is needed, remove the jumpers and connect the supply to terminals 100 and 101. Use a 5 A fuse for protection. In UL applications this should be LittleFuse KLK-5 or equivalent.

### 4.1.12 Fuses

#### Branch circuit protection

To protect the installation against electrical and fire hazard, all branch circuits in an installation, switch gear, machines etc., must be short-circuited and overcurrent protected according to national/international regulations.

| Power size | Enclosure<br>Size | Rating       |         | Bussmann<br>P/N | Spare<br>Bussmann<br>P/N | Estimated fuse power loss [W] |      |
|------------|-------------------|--------------|---------|-----------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|------|
|            |                   | Voltage (UL) | Amperes |                 |                          | 400V                          | 460V |
| P315T5     | F8/F9             | 700          | 700     | 170M4017        | 176F9179                 | 25                            | 19   |
| P355T5     | F8/F9             | 700          | 700     | 170M4017        | 176F9179                 | 30                            | 22   |
| P400T5     | F8/F9             | 700          | 700     | 170M4017        | 176F9179                 | 38                            | 29   |
| P450T5     | F8/F9             | 700          | 700     | 170M4017        | 176F9179                 | 3500                          | 2800 |
| P500T5     | F10/F11           | 700          | 900     | 170M6013        | 176F9180                 | 3940                          | 4925 |
| P560T5     | F10/F11           | 700          | 900     | 170M6013        | 176F9180                 | 2625                          | 2100 |
| P630T5     | F10/F11           | 700          | 900     | 170M6013        | 176F9180                 | 3940                          | 4925 |
| P710T5     | F10/F11           | 700          | 1500    | 170M6018        | 176F9181                 | 45                            | 34   |
| P800T5     | F12/F13           | 700          | 1500    | 170M6018        | 176F9181                 | 60                            | 45   |
| P1M0T5     | F12/F13           | 700          | 1500    | 170M6018        | 176F9181                 | 83                            | 63   |

Table 4.7 Mains Fuses, 380-500 V

#### Short-circuit protection

Protect the frequency converter against short-circuit to avoid electrical or fire hazard. Danfoss recommends using the fuses mentioned in to *Table 4.18* to protect service personnel and equipment in case of an internal failure in the frequency converter. The frequency converter provides full short-circuit protection in case of a short-circuit on the motor output.

#### Overcurrent protection

Provide overload protection to avoid fire hazard due to overheating of the cables in the installation. The frequency converter is equipped with an internal overcurrent protection, which can be used for upstream overload protection (UL-applications excluded). See *4-18 Current Limit*. Moreover, fuses or circuit breakers can be used to provide the overcurrent protection in the installation. Overcurrent protection must always be carried out according to national regulations.

#### UL compliance

The fuses in this section are suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering 100000 A<sub>rms</sub> (symmetrical), 240 V, or 480 V, or 500V, or 600 V depending on the frequency converter voltage rating. With the proper fusing the frequency converter Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR) is 100000 A<sub>rms</sub>.



| Power size | Enclosure | Rating |              | Bussmann | Spare Bussmann | Estimated fuse power loss [W] |      |
|------------|-----------|--------|--------------|----------|----------------|-------------------------------|------|
|            |           | Size   | Voltage (UL) | Amperes  | P/N            | P/N                           | 600V |
| P450T7     | F8/F9     | 700    | 630          | 170M4016 | 176F9179       | 13                            | 10   |
| P500T7     | F8/F9     | 700    | 630          | 170M4016 | 176F9179       | 17                            | 13   |
| P560T7     | F8/F9     | 700    | 630          | 170M4016 | 176F9179       | 22                            | 16   |
| P630T7     | F8/F9     | 700    | 630          | 170M4016 | 176F9179       | 24                            | 18   |
| P710T7     | F10/F11   | 700    | 900          | 170M6013 | 176F9180       | 26                            | 20   |
| P800T7     | F10/F11   | 700    | 900          | 170M6013 | 176F9180       | 35                            | 27   |
| P900T7     | F10/F11   | 700    | 900          | 170M6013 | 176F9180       | 44                            | 33   |
| P1M0T7     | F12/F13   | 700    | 1500         | 170M6018 | 176F9181       | 26                            | 20   |
| P1M2T7     | F12/F13   | 700    | 1500         | 170M6018 | 176F9181       | 37                            | 28   |
| P1M4T7     | F12/F13   | 700    | 1500         | 170M6018 | 176F9181       | 47                            | 36   |

Table 4.8 Mains Fuses, 525-690 V

| Size/Type | Bussmann PN* | Rating         | Siba           |
|-----------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| P500      | 170M8611     | 1100 A, 1000 V | 20 781 32.1000 |
| P560      | 170M8611     | 1100 A, 1000 V | 20 781 32.1000 |
| P630      | 170M6467     | 1400 A, 700 V  | 20 681 32.1400 |
| P710      | 170M6467     | 1400 A, 700 V  | 20 681 32.1400 |
| P800      | 170M8611     | 1100 A, 1000 V | 20 781 32.1000 |
| P1M0      | 170M6467     | 1400 A, 700 V  | 20 681 32.1400 |

Table 4.9 Inverter module DC Link Fuses, 380-500V

| Size/Type | Bussmann PN* | Rating         | Siba            |
|-----------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|
| P710      | 170M8611     | 1100 A, 1000 V | 20 781 32. 1000 |
| P800      | 170M8611     | 1100 A, 1000 V | 20 781 32. 1000 |
| P900      | 170M8611     | 1100 A, 1000 V | 20 781 32. 1000 |
| P1M0      | 170M8611     | 1100 A, 1000 V | 20 781 32. 1000 |
| P1M2      | 170M8611     | 1100 A, 1000 V | 20 781 32. 1000 |
| P1M4      | 170M8611     | 1100A, 1000V   | 20 781 32.1000  |

Table 4.10 Inverter module DC Link Fuses, 525-690V

\*170M fuses from Bussmann shown use the -/80 visual indicator, - TN/80 Type T, -/110 or TN/110 Type T indicator fuses of the same size and amperage may be substituted for external use.

## Supplementary fuses

|                 | Size/Type            | Bussmann PN*     | Rating      | Alternative Fuses                                 |
|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|-------------|---|
| 2.5-4.0 A Fuse  | P500-P1M0, 380-500 V | LPJ-6 SP or SPI  | 6 A, 600 V  | Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 6A   |
|                 | P710-P1M4, 525-690 V | LPJ-10 SP or SPI | 10 A, 600 V | Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 10 A |
| 4.0-6.3 A Fuse  | P500-P1M0, 380-500 V | LPJ-10 SP or SPI | 10 A, 600 V | Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 10 A |
|                 | P710-P1M4, 525-690 V | LPJ-15 SP or SPI | 15 A, 600 V | Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 15 A |
| 6.3 - 10 A Fuse | P500-P1M0, 380-500 V | LPJ-15 SP or SPI | 15 A, 600 V | Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 15 A |
|                 | P710-P1M4, 525-690 V | LPJ-20 SP or SPI | 20 A, 600 V | Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 20A  |
| 10 - 16 A Fuse  | P500-P1M0, 380-500 V | LPJ-25 SP or SPI | 25 A, 600 V | Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 25 A |
|                 | P710-P1M4, 525-690 V | LPJ-20 SP or SPI | 20 A, 600 V | Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 20 A |

Table 4.11 Manual Motor Controller Fuses

| Enclosure size | Bussmann PN* | Rating    |
|----------------|--------------|-----------|
| F8-F13         | KTK-4        | 4 A, 600V |

Table 4.12 SMPS Fuse

| Size/Type            | Bussmann PN* | Littelfuse | Rating    |
|----------------------|--------------|------------|-----------|
| P355-P1M0, 380-500 V |              | KLK-15     | 15A, 600V |
| P450-P1M4, 525-690 V |              | KLK-15     | 15A, 600V |

Table 4.13 Fan Fuses

| Enclosure size | Bussmann PN*     | Rating      | Alternative fuses                                 |
|----------------|------------------|-------------|---|
| F8-F13         | LPJ-30 SP or SPI | 30 A, 600 V | Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 30 A |

Table 4.14 30 A Fuse Protected Terminal Fuse

| Enclosure size | Bussmann PN*    | Rating     | Alternative fuses                                |
|----------------|-----------------|------------|--|
| F8-F13         | LPJ-6 SP or SPI | 6 A, 600 V | Any listed Class J Dual Element, Time Delay, 6 A |

Table 4.15 Control Transformer Fuse

| Enclosure size | Bussmann PN* | Rating      |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| F8-F13         | GMC-800MA    | 800mA, 250V |

Table 4.16 NAMUR Fuse

| Frame size | Bussmann PN* | Rating   | Alternative fuses       |
|------------|--------------|----------|-------------------------|
| F8-F13     | LP-CC-6      | 6A, 600V | Any listed Class CC, 6A |

Table 4.17 Safety Relay Coil Fuse with PILS Relay

| Enclosure size   | Power | Type                          |
|------------------|-------|-------------------------------|
| <b>380-500 V</b> |       |                               |
| F9               | P250  | ABB OETL-NF600A               |
| F9               | P315  | ABB OETL-NF600A               |
| F9               | P355  | ABB OETL-NF600A               |
| F9               | P400  | ABB OETL-NF600A               |
| F11              | P450  | ABB OETL-NF800A               |
| F11              | P500  | ABB OETL-NF800A               |
| F11              | P560  | ABB OETL-NF800A               |
| F11              | P630  | ABB OT800U21                  |
| F13              | P710  | Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP |
| F13              | P800  | Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP |
| <b>525-690 V</b> |       |                               |
| F9               | P355  | ABB OT400U12-121              |
| F9               | P400  | ABB OT400U12-121              |
| F9               | P500  | ABB OT400U12-121              |
| F9               | P560  | ABB OT400U12-121              |
| F11              | P630  | ABB OETL-NF600A               |
| F11              | P710  | ABB OETL-NF600A               |
| F11              | P800  | ABB OT800U21                  |
| F13              | P900  | ABB OT800U21                  |
| F13              | P1M0  | Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP |
| F13              | P1M2  | Merlin Gerin NPJF36000S12AAYP |

Table 4.18 Mains Disconnectors

### 4.1.13 Motor Insulation

For motor cable lengths  $\leq$  the maximum cable length listed in , the motor insulation ratings in *Table 4.19* are recommended. Peak voltage can be up to twice the DC-link voltage, and 2.8 times the mains voltage, due to transmission line effects in the motor cable. If a motor has lower insulation rating, use a dU/dt or sine-wave filter.

| Nominal mains voltage [V] | Motor insulation [V]     |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| $U_N \leq 420$            | Standard $U_{LL}=1300$   |
| $420 < U_N \leq 500$      | Reinforced $U_{LL}=1600$ |
| $500 < U_N \leq 600$      | Reinforced $U_{LL}=1800$ |
| $600 < U_N \leq 690$      | Reinforced $U_{LL}=2000$ |

Table 4.19 Motor Insulation Ratings

### 4.1.14 Motor Bearing Currents

All motors installed with VLT® HVAC Drive 315kW or higher power drives should have NDE (Non-Drive End) insulated bearings installed to eliminate circulating bearing currents. To minimize DE (Drive End) bearing and shaft currents proper grounding of the drive, motor, driven machine, and motor to the driven machine is required.

**Standard Mitigation Strategies:**

1. Use an insulated bearing
2. Apply rigorous installation procedures
  - Ensure the motor and load motor are aligned
  - Strictly follow the EMC Installation guideline
  - Reinforce the PE so the high frequency impedance is lower in the PE than the input power leads
  - Provide a good high frequency connection between the motor and the frequency converter for instance by screened cable which has a 360° connection in the motor and the frequency converter
  - Make sure that the impedance from frequency converter to building ground is lower than the grounding impedance of the machine. This can be difficult for pumps
  - Make a direct earth connection between the motor and load motor
3. Lower the IGBT switching frequency
4. Modify the inverter waveform, 60° AVM vs. SFAVM

5. Install a shaft grounding system or use an isolating coupling
6. Apply conductive lubrication
7. Use minimum speed settings if possible
8. Try to ensure the line voltage is balanced to ground. This can be difficult for IT, TT, TN-CS or Grounded leg systems
9. Use a dU/dt or sinus filter

### 4.1.15 Brake Resistor Temperature Switch

- Torque: 0.5-0.6 Nm (5 in-lbs)
- Screw size: M3

This input can be used to monitor the temperature of an externally connected brake resistor. If the input between 104 and 106 is established, the frequency converter trips on warning/alarm 27 *Brake IGBT*. If the connection is closed between 104 and 105, the frequency converter trips on warning/alarm 27 *Brake IGBT*.

Install a KLIXON switch that is normally closed. If this function is not used, short-circuit 106 and 104 together.

- Normally closed: 104-106 (factory installed jumper)
- Normally open: 104-105

| Terminal number | Function                           |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| 106, 104, 105   | Brake resistor temperature switch. |

Table 4.20 Brake Resistor Temperature Switch Terminals

### CAUTION

If the temperature of the brake resistor gets too high and the thermal switch drops out, the frequency converter stops braking and the motor starts coasting.

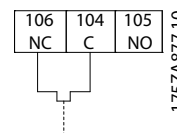


Illustration 4.15 Brake Resistor Temperature Switch

### 4.1.16 Control Cable Routing

Tie all control wires down to the designated control cable routing. Remember to connect the shields in a proper way to ensure optimum electrical immunity.

**Fieldbus connection**

Connections are made to the relevant options on the control card. For details, see the relevant fieldbus instruction. Place the cable in the provided path inside the

frequency converter and tie it down with other control wires.

**Installation of 24 V external DC supply**

- Torque: 0.5 - 0.6 Nm (5 in-lbs)
- Screw size: M3

| Terminal number | Function                |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 35 (-), 36 (+)  | 24 V external DC supply |

Table 4.21 Terminals for 24 V External DC Supply

24 V DC external supply can be used as low-voltage supply to the control card and any option cards installed. This enables full operation of the LCP (including parameter setting) without connection to the mains. A warning of low voltage is given when 24 V DC has been connected; however, there is no tripping.

**NOTICE**

Use 24 V DC PELV supply to ensure correct galvanic isolation (type PELV) on the control terminals of the frequency converter.

4.1.17 Access to Control Terminals

All terminals to the control cables are located beneath the LCP. They are accessed by opening the door of the IP21/ IP54 unit, or by removing the covers of the IP00 unit.

4.1.18 Electrical Installation, Control Terminals

To connect the cable to the terminal:

1. Strip the insulation by about 9–10 mm

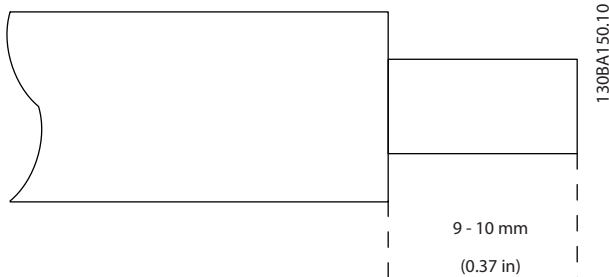


Illustration 4.16 Stripping of Insulation

2. Insert a screwdriver<sup>1)</sup> in the square hole.
3. Insert the cable in the adjacent circular hole.

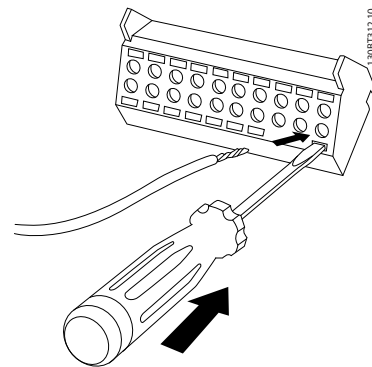


Illustration 4.17 Inserting Cable

4. Remove the screwdriver. The cable is now mounted in the terminal.

1) Maximum 0.4x2.5 mm

To remove the cable from the terminal:

1. Insert a screwdriver<sup>1)</sup> in the square hole.
2. Pull out the cable.

1) Max. 0.4x2.5 mm

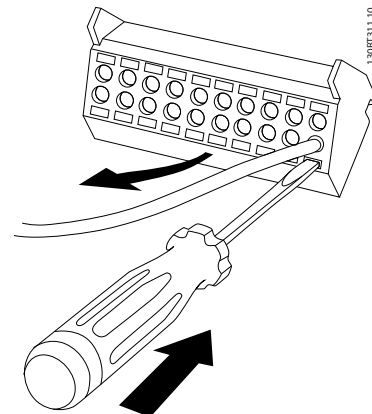


Illustration 4.18 Removing Cable

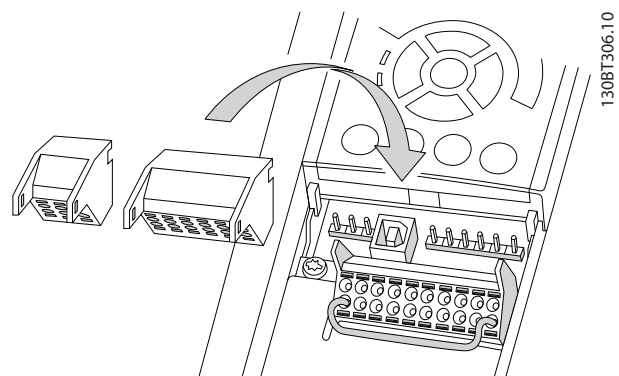


Illustration 4.19 Unplugging Control Terminals

## 4.2 Connection Examples

### 4.2.1 Start/Stop

Terminal 18 = 5-10 Terminal 18 Digital Input [8] Start  
 Terminal 27 = 5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input [0] No operation (Default coast inverse)  
 Terminal 37 = Safe Torque Off

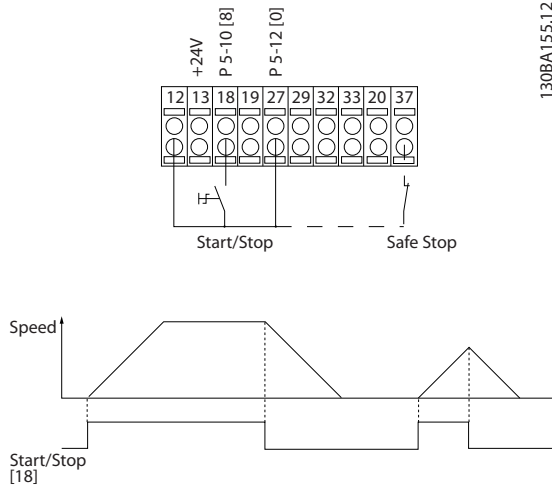


Illustration 4.20 Wiring Start/Stop

### 4.2.2 Pulse Start/Stop

Terminal 18 = 5-10 Terminal 18 Digital Input [9] Latched start  
 Terminal 27 = 5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input [6] Stop inverse  
 Terminal 37 = Safe Torque Off

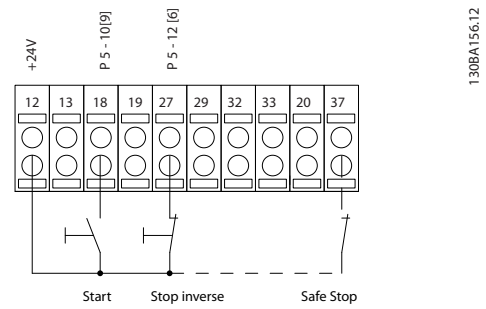


Illustration 4.21 Wiring Pulse Start/Stop

### 4.2.3 Speed Up/Down

#### Terminals 29/32 = Speed up/down

Terminal 18 = 5-10 Terminal 18 Digital Input [9] Start (default)

Terminal 27 = 5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input [19] Freeze reference

Terminal 29 = 5-13 Terminal 29 Digital Input [21] Speed up

Terminal 32 = 5-14 Terminal 32 Digital Input [22] Speed down

#### NOTICE

Terminal 29 only in FC x02 (x=series type).

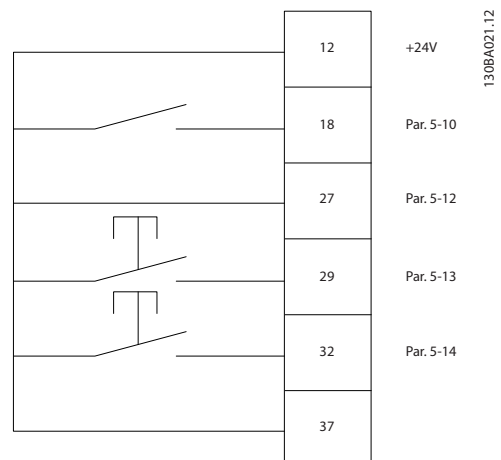


Illustration 4.22 Speed Up/Down

### 4.2.4 Potentiometer Reference

**Voltage reference via a potentiometer**

Reference Source 1 = [1] Analog input 53 (default)

Terminal 53, Low Voltage = 0 V

Terminal 53, High Voltage = 10 V

Terminal 53, Low Ref./Feedback = 0 RPM

Terminal 53, High Ref./Feedback = 1500 RPM

Switch S201 = OFF (U)

4

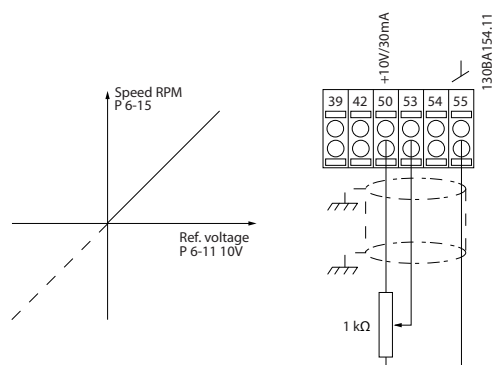


Illustration 4.23 Potentiometer Reference

4.3.1 Electrical Installation, Control Cables

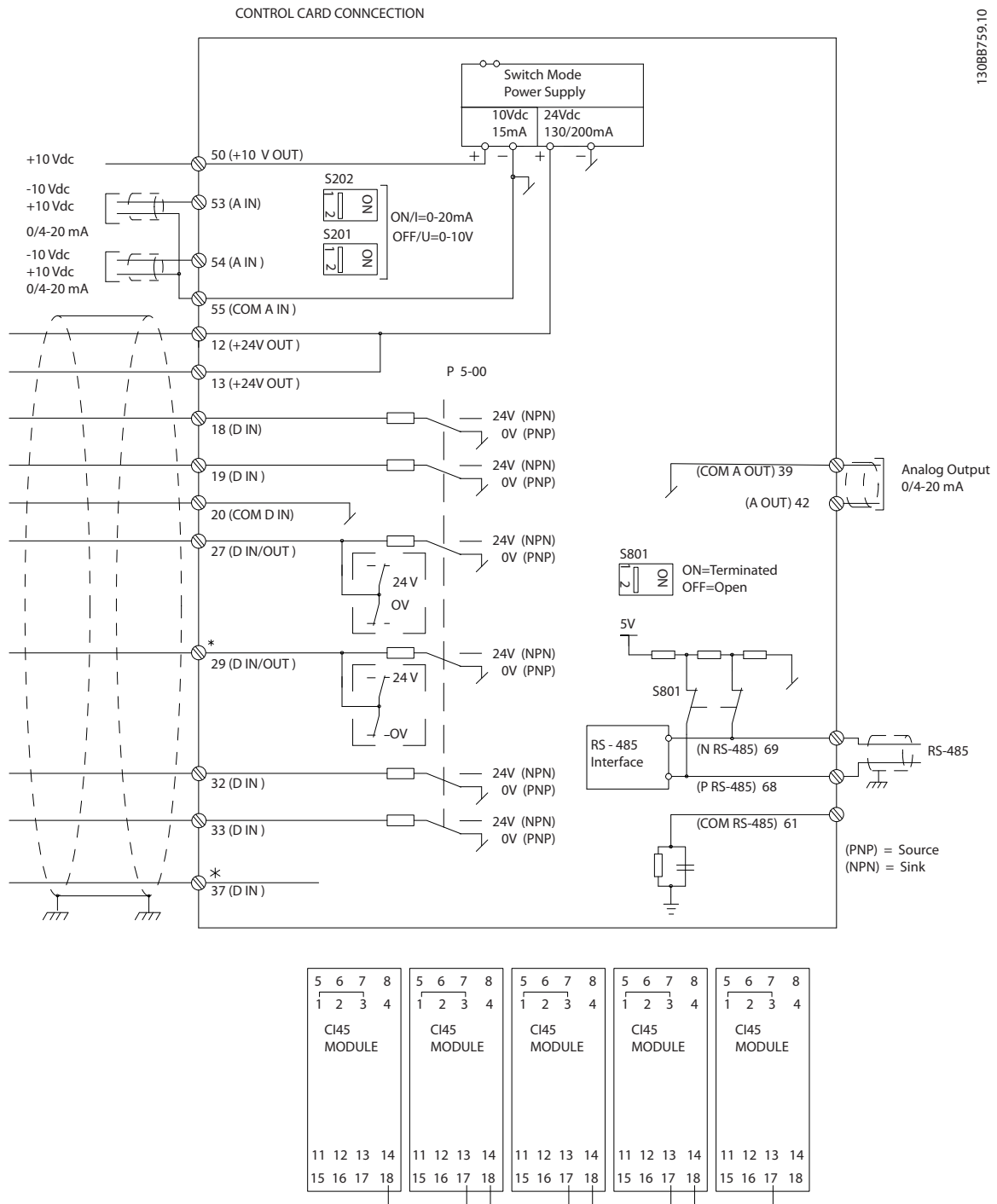
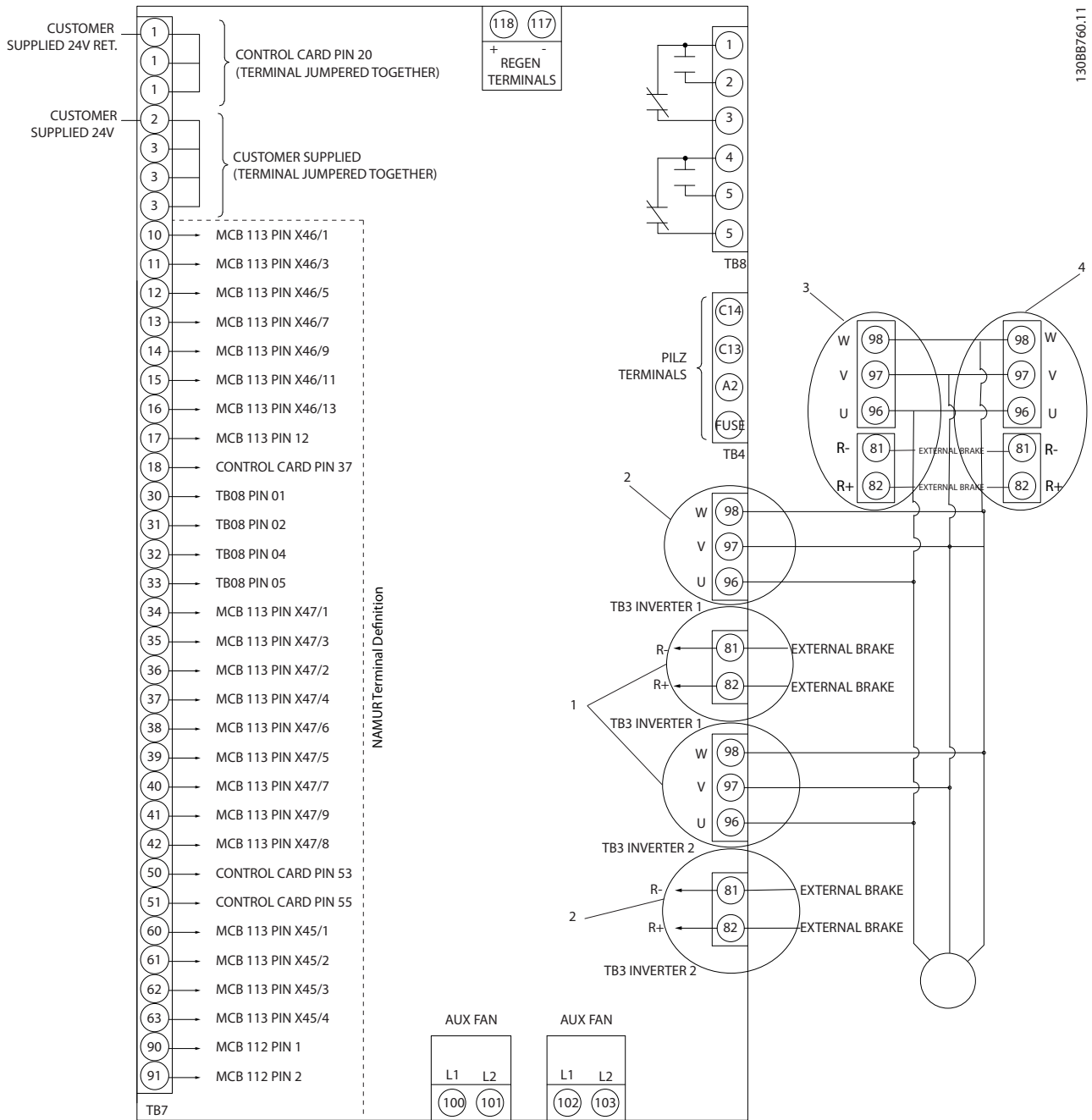


Illustration 4.24

A=Analog, D=Digital

\*Terminal 37 (optional) is used for Safe Torque Off. For Safe Torque Off installation instructions, refer to the *Safe Torque Off Operating Instructions for Danfoss VLT® Frequency Converters*.

\*\*Do not connect cable screen.



130BB760.11

Illustration 4.25 Diagram Showing all Electrical Terminals with NAMUR Option



Very long control cables and analog signals may in rare cases and depending on installation result in 50/60 Hz ground loops due to noise from mains supply cables.

If this occurs, it may be necessary to break the screen or insert a 100 nF capacitor between screen and chassis.

Connect the digital and analog inputs and outputs separately to the frequency converter common inputs (terminal 20, 55, 39) to avoid ground currents from both groups to affect other groups. For example, switching on the digital input may disturb the analog input signal.

**Input polarity of control terminals**

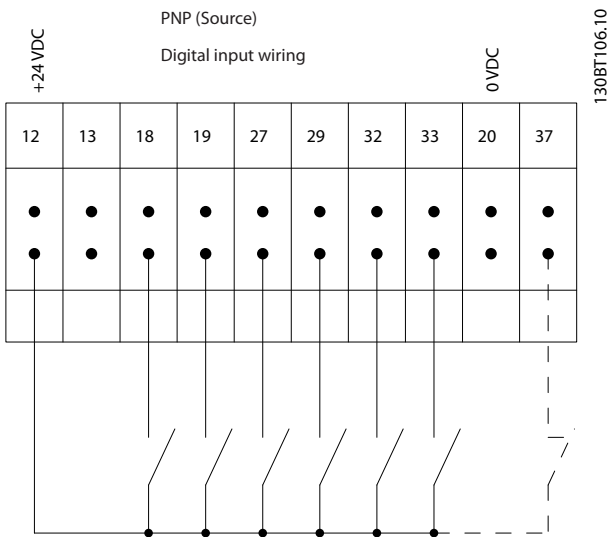


Illustration 4.26 PNP (Source)

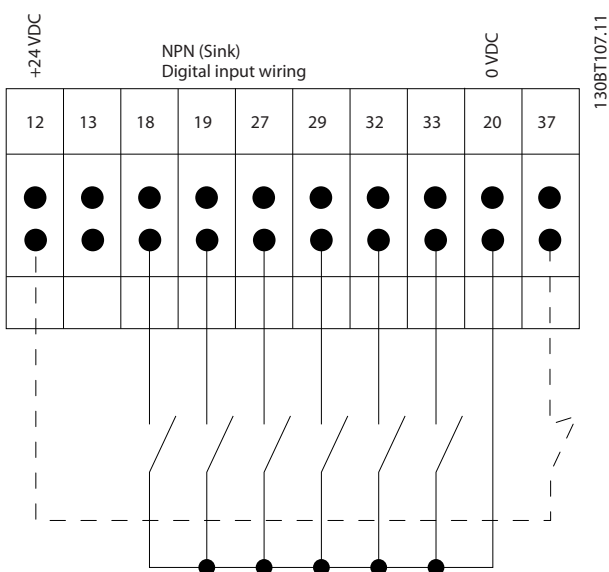


Illustration 4.27 NPN (Sink)

**NOTICE**

Control cables must be screened/armoured.

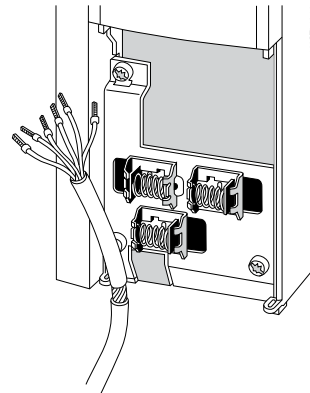


Illustration 4.28 Grounding of Screened/Armoured Control Cables

Connect the wires as described in the product related *Operating Instructions*. Remember to connect the shields in a proper way to ensure optimum electrical immunity.

**4.3.2 Switches S201, S202 and S801**

Use switches S201 (A53) and S202 (A54) to configure the analog input terminals 53 and 54 as a current (0–20 mA) or a voltage (-10 V to +10 V).

Enable termination on the RS-485 port (terminals 68 and 69) via the switch S801 (BUS TER.).

See *Illustration 4.24*.

**Default setting:**

- S201 (A53) = OFF (voltage input)
- S202 (A54) = OFF (voltage input)
- S801 (Bus termination) = OFF

**NOTICE**

When changing the function of S201, S202, or S801 do not to use force during the switch over. Remove the LCP fixture (cradle) when operating the switches. Do not operate the switches when the frequency converter is powered.

4

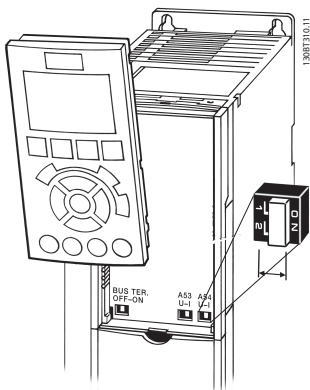


Illustration 4.29 Switch Location

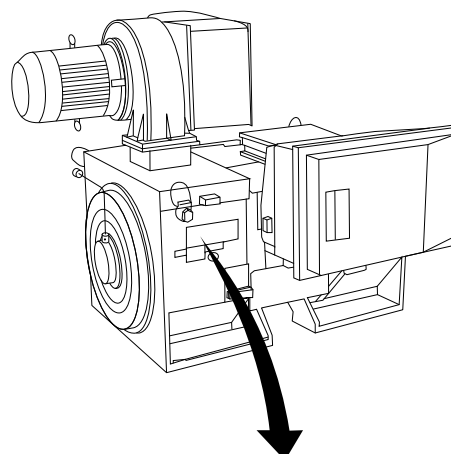
4.4 Final Set-up and Test

To test the set-up and to ensure that the frequency converter is running, follow these steps.

Step 1. Locate the motor nameplate

**NOTICE**

The motor is either star (Y) or delta connected ( $\Delta$ ). This information is on the motor nameplate.



130BA767.10

| THREE PHASE INDUCTION MOTOR |              |              |        |                 |     |
|-----------------------------|--------------|--------------|--------|-----------------|-----|
| MOD MCV 315E                | Nr.          | 135189 12 04 |        | IL/IN 6.5       |     |
| kW 400                      | PRIMARY      |              |        | SF 1.15         |     |
| HP 536                      | V 690        | A 410.6      | CONN Y | COS f 0.85 40   |     |
| mm 1481                     | V            | A            | CONN   | AMB 40 °C       |     |
| Hz 50                       | V            | A            | CONN   | ALT 1000 m      |     |
| DESIGNN                     | SECONDARY    |              |        | RISE 80 °C      |     |
| DUTY S1                     | V            | A            | CONN   | ENCLOSURE IP23  |     |
| INSUL I                     | EFFICIENCY % | 95.8%        | 100%   | 95.8%           | 75% |
|                             |              |              |        | WEIGHT 1.83 ton |     |
| <b>⚠ CAUTION</b>            |              |              |        |                 |     |

Illustration 4.30 Nameplate

Step 2. Enter the motor nameplate data in this parameter list.

To access this list, press [Quick Menu] then select Q2 Quick Setup.

1. 1-20 Motor Power [kW]  
1-21 Motor Power [HP]
2. 1-22 Motor Voltage
3. 1-23 Motor Frequency
4. 1-24 Motor Current
5. 1-25 Motor Nominal Speed

Step 3. Activate the Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)

Performing an AMA ensures optimum performance. The AMA measures the values from the motor model equivalent diagram.

1. Connect terminal 37 to terminal 12 (if terminal 37 is available).
2. Connect terminal 27 to terminal 12 or set 5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input to [0] No function.
3. Activate the AMA 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA).
4. Select between complete or reduced AMA. If a sine-wave filter is mounted, run only the reduced AMA, or remove the sine-wave filter during the AMA procedure.

5. Press [OK]. The display shows *Press [Hand On] to start*.
6. Press [Hand On]. A progress bar indicates if the AMA is in progress.

#### Stop the AMA during operation

1. Press [Off] - the frequency converter enters into alarm mode and the display shows that the user terminated the AMA.

#### Successful AMA

1. The display shows *Press [OK] to finish AMA*.
2. Press [OK] to exit the AMA state.

#### Unsuccessful AMA

1. The frequency converter enters into alarm mode. A description of the alarm can be found in .
2. *Report Value* in the [Alarm Log] shows that the last measuring sequence carried out by the AMA, before the frequency converter entered alarm mode. This number along with the description of the alarm helps with troubleshooting. If contacting Danfoss for service, state the alarm number and description.

### NOTICE

**Incorrectly registered motor nameplate data or a too big difference between the motor power size and the frequency converter power size often causes unsuccessful AMA.**

#### Step 4. Set the speed limit and ramp time

- 3-02 *Minimum Reference*
- 3-03 *Maximum Reference*

#### Step 5. Set up the desired limits for speed and ramp time.

- 4-11 *Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]* or 4-12 *Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]*
- 4-13 *Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]* or 4-14 *Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]*
- 3-41 *Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time*
- 3-42 *Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time*

## 4.5 Additional Connections

### 4.5.1 Mechanical Brake Control

**In hoisting/lowering applications, it is necessary to be able to control an electro-mechanical brake:**

- Control the brake using any relay output or digital output (terminal 27 or 29).
- Keep the output closed (voltage-free) as long as the frequency converter is unable to support the motor, for example due to the load being too heavy.

- Select [32] *Mechanical brake control* in parameter group 5-4\* *Relays* for applications with an electro-mechanical brake.
- The brake is released when the motor current exceeds the preset value in 2-20 *Release Brake Current*.
- The brake is engaged when the output frequency is less than the frequency set in 2-21 *Activate Brake Speed [RPM]* or 2-22 *Activate Brake Speed [Hz]*, and only if the frequency converter carries out a stop command.

If the frequency converter is in alarm mode or in an over-voltage situation, the mechanical brake immediately cuts in.

### 4.5.2 Parallel Connection of Motors

The frequency converter can control several parallel-connected motors. The total current consumption of the motors must not exceed the rated output current  $I_{M,N}$  for the frequency converter.

**NOTICE**

Installations with cables connected in a common joint as in *Illustration 4.31*, are only recommended for short cable lengths.

**NOTICE**

When motors are connected in parallel, *1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)* cannot be used.

**NOTICE**

The electronic thermal relay (ETR) of the frequency converter cannot be used as motor overload protection for the individual motor in systems with parallel-connected motors. Provide further motor overload protection, for example thermistors in each motor or individual thermal relays (circuit breakers are not suitable as protection).

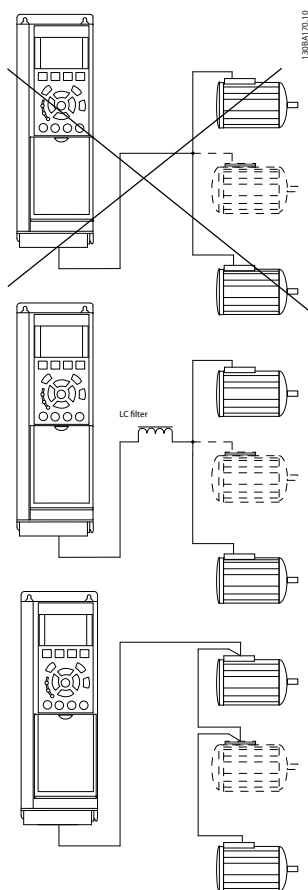


Illustration 4.31 Parallel Motor Connection

Problems may arise at start-up and at low RPM values if motor sizes are widely different because small motors' relatively high ohmic resistance in the stator calls for a higher voltage at start-up and at low RPM values.

4.5.3 Motor Thermal Protection

The electronic thermal relay in the frequency converter has received UL-approval for single motor overload protection, when *1-90 Motor Thermal Protection* is set for *[4] ETR Trip* and *1-24 Motor Current* are set to the rated motor current (see motor nameplate).

For thermal motor protection, it is also possible to use the MCB 112 PTC Thermistor Card option. This card provides ATEX certificate to protect motors in explosion hazardous areas, Zone 1/21 and Zone 2/22. When *1-90 Motor Thermal Protection* is set to *[20] ATEX ETR* and is combined with the use of MCB 112, it is possible to control an Ex-e motor in explosion hazardous areas. Consult the product relevant *Programming Guide* for details on how to set up the frequency converter for safe operation of Ex-e motors.

4.5.4 Mechanical Brake Control

In hoisting/lowering applications, it is necessary to be able to control an electro-mechanical brake:

- Control the brake using any relay output or digital output (terminal 27 or 29).
- Keep the output closed (voltage-free) as long as the frequency converter is unable to support the motor, for example due to the load being too heavy.
- Select *[32] Mechanical brake control* in parameter group *5-4\* Relays* for applications with an electro-mechanical brake.
- The brake is released when the motor current exceeds the preset value in *2-20 Release Brake Current*.
- The brake is engaged when the output frequency is less than the frequency set in *2-21 Activate Brake Speed [RPM]* or *2-22 Activate Brake Speed [Hz]*, and only if the frequency converter carries out a stop command.

If the frequency converter is in alarm mode or in an over-voltage situation, the mechanical brake immediately cuts in.

## 5 How to Operate the Frequency Converter

### 5.1.1 3 Ways of Operating

The frequency converter can be operated in 3 ways:

1. Graphical Local Control Panel (GLCP)
2. Numeric Local Control Panel (NLCP)
3. RS-485 serial communication or USB, both for PC connection

If the frequency converter is fitted with fieldbus option, refer to relevant documentation.

### 5.1.2 How to Operate Graphical LCP (GLCP)

The following instructions are valid for the GLCP (LCP 102).

The GLCP is divided into 4 functional groups

1. Graphical display with status lines.
2. Menu keys and indicator lights (LEDs) - selecting mode, changing parameters and switching between display functions.
3. Navigation keys and indicator lights (LEDs).
4. Operation keys and indicator lights (LEDs).

#### Graphical display

The LCD-display is back-lit with a total of 6 alpha-numeric lines. All data is displayed on the LCP which can show up to 5 operating variables while in [Status] mode.

#### Display lines

- a. **Status line:** Status messages displaying icons and graphics.
- b. **Line 1–2:** Operator data lines displaying data and variables defined or selected by the user. By pressing the [Status] key, up to one extra line can be added.
- c. **Status line:** Status messages displaying text.

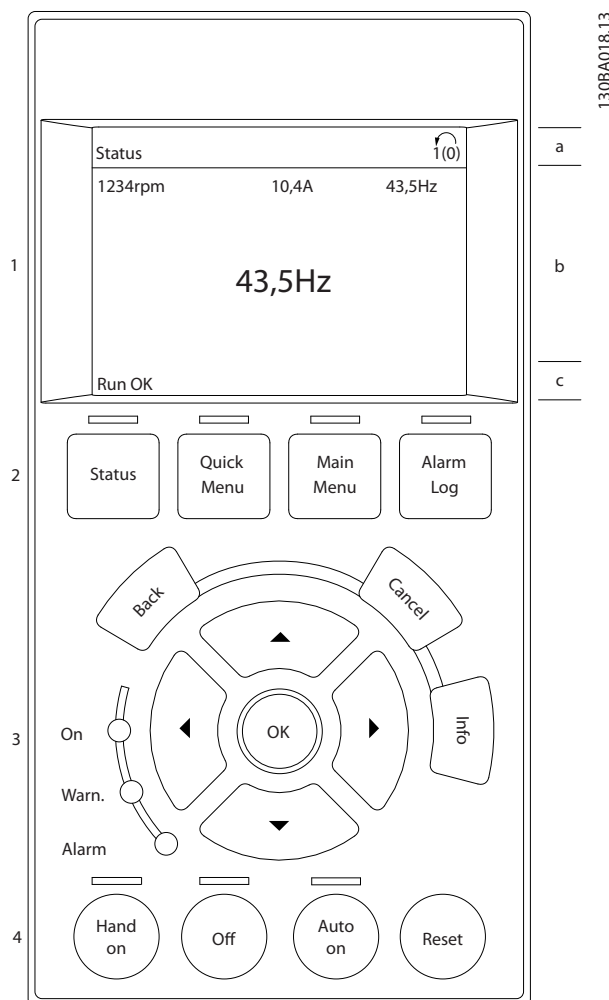


Illustration 5.1 LCP

#### The display is divided into 3 sections

##### Top section

(a) shows the status when in status mode or up to 2 variables when not in status mode and in the case of Alarm/Warning.

The number of the active set-up (selected as the active set-up in 0-10 Active Set-up) is shown. When programming in another set-up than the active set-up, the number of the set-up being programmed appears to the right in brackets.

##### Middle section

(b) shows up to 5 variables with related unit, regardless of status. In case of alarm/warning, the warning is shown instead of the variables.

##### Bottom section

(c) always shows the state of the frequency converter in status mode.

It is possible to toggle between 3 status readout displays by pressing the [Status] key. Operating variables with different formatting are shown in each status screen - see below.

Several values or measurements can be linked to each of the displayed operating variables. The values/measurements to be displayed can be defined via 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small, 0-21 Display Line 1.2 Small, 0-22 Display Line 1.3 Small, 0-23 Display Line 2 Large and 0-24 Display Line 3 Large, which can be accessed via [Quick Menu], Q3 Function Set-ups, Q3-1 General Settings, Q3-13 Display Settings.

Each value/measurement readout parameter selected in 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small to 0-24 Display Line 3 Large has its own scale and number of digits after a possible decimal point. Larger numeric values are displayed with few digits after the decimal point.

Ex.: Current readout  
5.25 A; 15.2 A 105 A.

**Status display I**

This readout state is standard after start-up or initialisation. Use [INFO] to obtain information about the value/measurement linked to the displayed operating variables (1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 2, and 3).

See the operating variables shown in the display in this illustration. 1.1, 1.2 and 1.3 are shown in small size. 2 and 3 are shown in medium size.

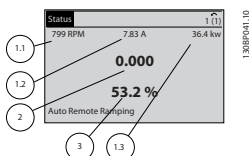


Illustration 5.2 Example of Status Display I

**Status display II**

See the operating variables (1.1, 1.2, 1.3, and 2) shown in the display in Illustration 5.3. In the example, speed, motor current, motor power and frequency are selected as variables in the first and second lines. 1.1, 1.2 and 1.3 are shown in small size. 2 is shown in large size.

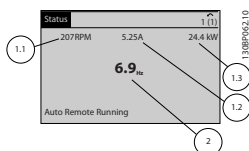


Illustration 5.3 Example of Status Display II

**Status display III**

This state displays the event and action of the Smart Logic Control.

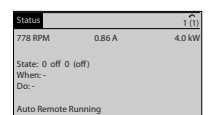


Illustration 5.4 Example of Status Display III

**Display Contrast Adjustment**

Press [status] and [▲] for darker display  
Press [status] and [▼] for brighter display

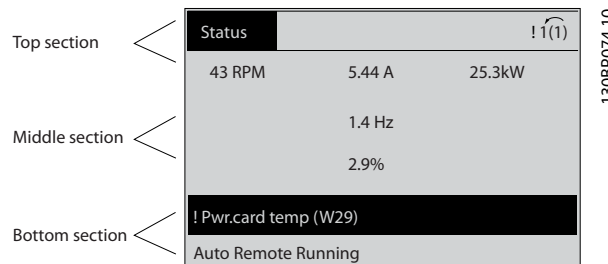


Illustration 5.5 Display Sections

**Indicator lights (LEDs)**

If certain threshold values are exceeded, the alarm and/or warning LED lights up. A status and alarm text appear in the display.

The On LED is activated when the frequency converter receives power from mains voltage, a DC bus terminal, or a 24 V external supply. At the same time, the backlight is on.

- Green LED/On: Control section is working.
- Yellow LED/Warn.: Indicates a warning.
- Flashing Red LED/Alarm: Indicates an alarm.

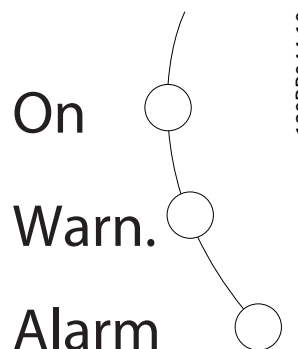


Illustration 5.6 Indicator Lights

**GLCP keys**

**Menu keys**

The menu keys are divided into functions. The keys below the display and indicator lights are used for parameter set-up, including selection of display indication during normal operation.



Illustration 5.7 Menu Keys

**[Status]**

indicates the status of the frequency converter and/or the motor. 3 different readouts can be selected by pressing the [Status] key:

- 5-line readouts
- 4-line readouts
- Smart Logic Control

Press [Status] to select the display mode or for changing back to Display mode from either Quick Menu mode, Main Menu mode or Alarm mode. Also press [Status] to toggle single or double readout mode.

**[Quick Menu]**

allows quick set-up of the frequency converter. The most common HVAC functions can be programmed here.

**The [Quick Menu] consists of**

- My Personal Menu
- Quick Set-up
- Function Set-up
- Changes Made
- Loggings

The Function Set-up provides quick and easy access to all parameters required for most HVAC applications including

- most VAV and CAV supply and return fans
- cooling tower fans
- primary, secondary and condenser water pumps
- other pump, fan and compressor applications

Among other features, it also includes parameters for selecting which variables to display in the LCP, digital preset speeds, scaling of analog references, closed loop single-zone and multi-zone applications and specific functions related to fans, pumps and compressors.

The Quick Menu parameters can be accessed immediately unless a password has been created via *0-60 Main Menu Password, 0-61 Access to Main Menu w/o Password, 0-65 Personal Menu Password or 0-66 Access to Personal Menu w/o Password.*

It is possible to switch directly between Quick Menu mode and Main Menu mode.

**[Main Menu]**

is used for programming all parameters. The Main Menu parameters can be accessed immediately unless a password has been created via *0-60 Main Menu Password,*

*0-61 Access to Main Menu w/o Password, 0-65 Personal Menu Password or 0-66 Access to Personal Menu w/o Password.* For most HVAC applications, it is not necessary to access the Main Menu parameters. Instead, the Quick Menu, Quick Set-up and Function Set-up provide the simplest and quickest access to the typical required parameters.

It is possible to switch directly between Main Menu mode and Quick Menu mode.

Parameter shortcut can be carried out by pressing down [Main Menu] for 3 s. The parameter shortcut allows direct access to any parameter.

**[Alarm Log]**

displays an alarm list of the 10 latest alarms (numbered A1-A10). To obtain more details about an alarm, press the navigation keys to manoeuvre to the alarm number and press [OK]. Information is displayed about the condition of the frequency converter before it enters the alarm mode.

The [Alarm Log] key on the LCP allows access to both alarm log and maintenance log.

**[Back]**

reverts to the previous step or layer in the navigation structure.



Illustration 5.8 Back Key

**[Cancel]**

Cancels the last change or command as long as the display has not been changed.



Illustration 5.9 Cancel Key

**[Info]**

displays information about a command, parameter, or function in any display window. [Info] provides detailed information when needed.

Exit Info mode by pressing either [Info], [Back], or [Cancel].



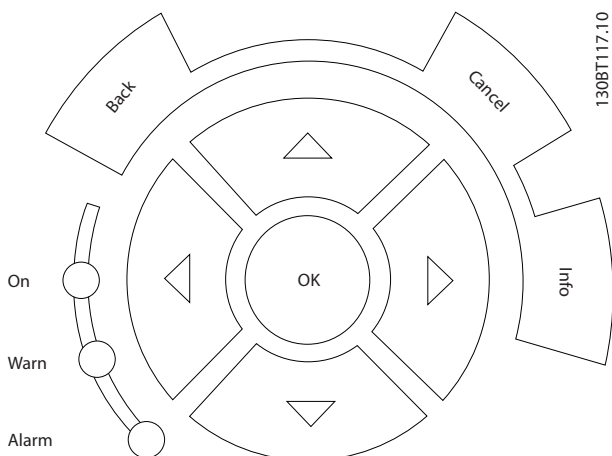
Illustration 5.10 Info Key

**Navigation Keys**

The 4 navigation keys are used to navigate between the different options available in [Quick Menu], [Main Menu] and [Alarm Log]. Press the keys to move the cursor.

**[OK]**

is used for selecting a parameter marked by the cursor and for enabling the change of a parameter.

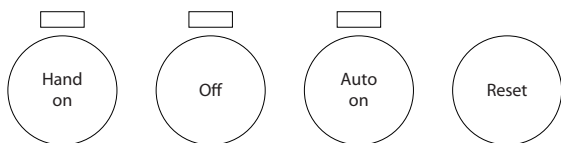


130BT117.10

Illustration 5.11

**Operation Keys**

for local control are found at the bottom of the control panel.



130BP046.10

Illustration 5.12 Operation Keys

**[Hand On]**

enables control of the frequency converter via the GLCP. [Hand On] also starts the motor, and it is now possible to enter the motor speed data with the navigation keys. The key can be selected as [1] Enable or [0] Disable via 0-40 [Hand on] Key on LCP.

The following control signals are still active when [Hand On] is activated:

- [Hand On] - [Off] - [Auto On]
- Reset
- Coasting stop inverse
- Reversing
- Set-up select lsb - Set-up select msb
- Stop command from serial communication
- Quick stop
- DC brake

**NOTICE**

External stop signals activated with control signals or a fieldbus overrides a start command via the LCP.

**[Off]**

stops the connected motor. The key can be selected as [1] Enabled or [0] Disabled via 0-41 [Off] Key on LCP. If no external stop function is selected and the [Off] key is inactive, the motor can only be stopped by disconnecting the mains supply.

**[Auto On]**

enables the frequency converter to be controlled via the control terminals and/or serial communication. When a start signal is applied on the control terminals and/or the bus, the frequency converter starts. The key can be selected as [1] Enabled or [0] Disabled via 0-42 [Auto on] Key on LCP.

**NOTICE**

An active HAND-OFF-AUTO signal via the digital inputs has higher priority than the control keys [Hand On] – [Auto On].

**[Reset]**

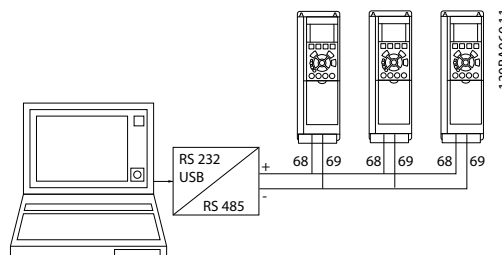
is used for resetting the frequency converter after an alarm (trip). It can be selected as [1] Enable or [0] Disable via 0-43 [Reset] Key on LCP.

The parameter shortcut can be carried out by holding down the [Main Menu] key for 3 s. The parameter shortcut allows direct access to any parameter.

**5.1.3 RS-485 Bus Connection**

One or more frequency converters can be connected to a controller (or master) using the RS-485 standard interface. Terminal 68 is connected to the P signal (TX+, RX+), while terminal 69 is connected to the N signal (TX-, RX-).

If more than one frequency converter is connected to a master, use parallel connections.



130BA060.11

Illustration 5.13 Connection Example.

To avoid potential equalising currents in the screen, ground the cable screen via terminal 61, which is connected to the frame via an RC-link.



**Bus termination**

Terminate the RS-485 bus by a resistor network at both ends. If the frequency converter is the first or the last device in the RS-485 loop, set the switch S801 on the control card for ON.

For more information, see the paragraph *Switches S201, S202, and S801*.

### 5.1.4 How to Connect a PC to the Frequency Converter

To control or program the frequency converter from a PC, install the PC-based configuration tool MCT 10 Set-up Software.

The PC is connected via a standard (host/device) USB cable, or via the RS-485 interface as shown in *chapter 5.1.3 RS-485 Bus Connection*.

**NOTICE**

The USB connection is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals. The USB connection is connected to protective earth. Use only an isolated laptop as PC connection to the USB connector on the frequency converter.

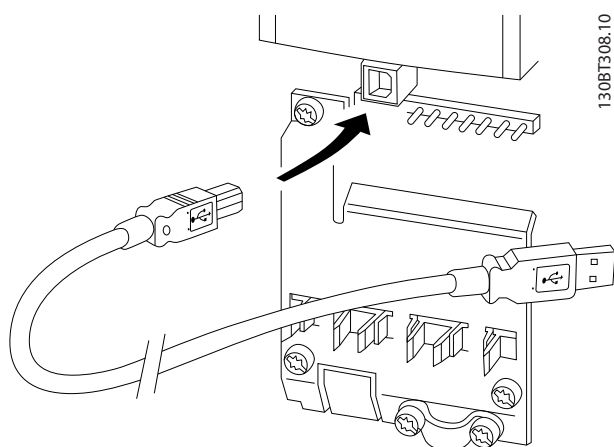


Illustration 5.14 USB Connection to Frequency Converter

### 5.1.5 PC Software Tools

**PC-based MCT 10 Set-up Software**

All frequency converters are equipped with a serial communication port. Danfoss provides a PC tool for communication between PC and frequency converter. Check the section on for detailed information on this tool.

**MCT 10 Set-up Software**

MCT 10 Set-up Software has been designed as an easy to use interactive tool for setting parameters in our frequency converters.

The MCT 10 Set-up Software is useful for:

- Planning a communication network off-line. MCT 10 Set-up Software contains a complete frequency converter database.
- Commissioning frequency converters on line.
- Saving settings for all frequency converters.
- Replacing a frequency converter in a network.
- Simple and accurate documentation of frequency converter settings after commissioning.
- Expanding an existing network.
- Future developed frequency converters are supported.

MCT 10 Set-up Software supports Profibus DP-V1 via a master class 2 connection. It enables online reading/writing of parameters in a frequency converter via the Profibus network. This network eliminates the need for an extra communication network.

**Save frequency converter settings:**

1. Connect a PC to the unit via USB com port. (NOTE: Use a PC, which is isolated from the mains, with the USB port. Failure to do so may damage equipment.)
2. Open MCT 10 Set-up Software.
3. Select *Read from drive*.
4. Select *Save as*.

All parameters are now stored in the PC.

**Load frequency converter settings:**

1. Connect a PC to the frequency converter via USB com port.
2. Open MCT 10 Set-up Software.
3. Select *Open* – stored files are shown.
4. Open the appropriate file.
5. Select *Write to drive*.

All parameter settings are now transferred to the frequency converter.

A separate manual for MCT 10 Set-up Software is available from [www.Danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Softwaredownload/DDPC+Software+Program.htm](http://www.Danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/Softwaredownload/DDPC+Software+Program.htm).

**The MCT 10 Set-up software modules**

The following modules are included in the software package.

|  |   |
|--|---|
|  | <b>MCT Set-up 10 Software</b><br>Setting parameters<br>Copy to and from frequency converters<br>Documentation and print of parameter settings<br>incl. diagrams |
|  | <b>Ext. user interface</b><br>Preventive Maintenance Schedule<br>Clock settings<br>Timed Action Programming<br>Smart Logic Controller Set-up                    |

Table 5.1

**Ordering number:**

Order the CD containing MCT 10 Set-up Software using code number 130B1000.

The software can be downloaded from the Danfoss internet site [www.Danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/SoftwareDownload/DDPC+Software+Program.htm](http://www.Danfoss.com/BusinessAreas/DrivesSolutions/SoftwareDownload/DDPC+Software+Program.htm)

### 5.1.6 Tips and Tricks

- For most HVAC applications the Quick Menu, Quick Set-up and Function Set-up provides the simplest and quickest access to all the typical parameters required
- Whenever possible, performing an AMA, ensures best shaft performance
- Contrast of the display can be adjusted by pressing [Status] and [▲] for darker display or by pressing [Status] and [▼] for brighter display
- Under [Quick Menu] and [Changes Made] all parameters that have been changed from factory settings are displayed
- Press and hold [Main Menu] key for 3 s for access to any parameter
- For service purposes, copy all parameters to the LCP, see *0-50 LCP Copy* for further information

### 5.1.7 Quick Transfer of Parameter Settings when Using GLCP

Once the set-up of a frequency converter is complete, store (back up) the parameter settings in the GLCP or on a PC via MCT 10 Set-up Software.

## ⚠ WARNING

Stop the motor before performing any of these operations.

### Data storage in LCP

1. Go to *0-50 LCP Copy*.
2. Press [OK].
3. Select [1] *All to LCP*.
4. Press [OK].

All parameter settings are now stored in the GLCP indicated by the progress bar. When 100% is reached, press [OK].

The GLCP can now be connected to another frequency converter and the parameter settings copied to this frequency converter.

### Data transfer from LCP to frequency converter

1. Go to *0-50 LCP Copy*.
2. Press [OK].
3. Select [2] *All from LCP*.
4. Press [OK]

The parameter settings stored in the GLCP are now transferred to the frequency converter indicated by the progress bar. When 100% is reached, press [OK].

### 5.1.8 Initialisation to Default Settings

There are 2 ways to initialise the frequency converter to default: Recommended initialisation and manual initialisation.

Be aware that they have different impact according to the following description.

#### Recommended initialisation (via 14-22 Operation Mode)

1. Select *14-22 Operation Mode*.
2. Press [OK].
3. Select [2] *Initialisation* (for NLCP select "2").
4. Press [OK].
5. Remove power to unit and wait for display to turn off.
6. Reconnect power and the frequency converter is reset. Note that first start-up takes a few more seconds.
7. Press [Reset]

*14-22 Operation Mode* initialises all except:

*14-50 RFI Filter*

*8-30 Protocol*

*8-31 Address*

*8-32 Baud Rate*

*8-35 Minimum Response Delay*

*8-36 Max Response Delay*

*8-37 Maximum Inter-Char Delay*

*15-00 Operating hours to 15-05 Over Volt's*

15-20 Historic Log: Event to 15-22 Historic Log: Time  
15-30 Alarm Log: Error Code to 15-32 Alarm Log: Time

**NOTICE**

Parameters selected in 0-25 My Personal Menu stay present with default factory setting.

**Manual initialisation****NOTICE**

When carrying out manual initialisation, serial communication, RFI filter settings and fault log settings are reset. Removes parameters selected in 0-25 My Personal Menu.

1. Disconnect from mains and wait until the display turns off.
2. Press
  - 2a [Status] - [Main Menu] - [OK] at the same time while powering up for Graphical LCP (GLCP).
  - 2b [Menu] while powering up for LCP 101, Numerical Display.
3. Release the keys after 5 s.
4. The frequency converter is now programmed according to default settings.

This parameter initialises all except:

15-00 Operating hours  
15-03 Power Up's  
15-04 Over Temp's  
15-05 Over Volt's

## 6 How to Programme

### 6.1.1 Parameter Set-Up

6

| Group | Title                 | Function   |
|-------|-----------------------|--|
| 0**   | Operation and Display | <p>Parameters used to program the fundamental functions of the frequency converter and the LCP including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selection of language</li> <li>• Selection of which variables are displayed at each position in the display. As an example, static duct pressure or condenser water return temperature can be displayed with the setpoint in small digits in the top row and feedback in large digits in the centre of the display)</li> <li>• Enabling/disabling of the LCP keys</li> <li>• Passwords for the LCP</li> <li>• Upload and download of commissioned parameters to/from the LCP</li> <li>• Setting the built-in clock</li> </ul> |
| 1**   | Load/Motor            | <p>Parameters used to configure the frequency converter for the specific application and motor including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Open or closed loop operation</li> <li>• Type of application such as compressor, fan or centrifugal pump</li> <li>• Motor nameplate data</li> <li>• Auto-tuning of the frequency converter to the motor for optimum performance</li> <li>• Flying start (typically used for fan applications)</li> <li>• Thermal motor protection</li> </ul>  |
| 2**   | Brakes                | <p>Parameters used to configure brake functions of the frequency converter which although not common in many HVAC applications, can be useful on special fan applications. Parameters including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DC brake</li> <li>• Dynamic/resistor brake</li> <li>• Overvoltage control (which provides automatic adjustment of the deceleration rate (auto-ramping) to avoid tripping when decelerating large inertia fans)</li> </ul>  |
| 3**   | Reference/Ramps       | <p>Parameters used to program the</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• minimum and maximum reference limits of speed (RPM/Hz) in open loop or in actual units when operating in closed loop)</li> <li>• digital/preset references</li> <li>• jog speed</li> <li>• definition of the source of each reference (for example, which analog input the reference signal is connected to)</li> <li>• ramp-up and ramp-down times</li> <li>• digital potentiometer settings</li> </ul>  |

| Group | Title                     | Function  |
|-------|---------------------------|---|
| 4**   | Limits/Warnings           | <p>Parameters used to program limits and warnings of operation including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allowable motor direction</li> <li>• Minimum and maximum motor speeds. As an example, in pump applications the minimum speed is often set to approx 30–40%. This speed ensures that pump seals always are adequately lubricated, avoid cavitation and ensure that adequate head always is produced to create flow)</li> <li>• Torque and current limits to protect the pump, fan or compressor driven by the motor</li> <li>• Warnings for low/high current, speed, reference, and feedback</li> <li>• Missing motor phase protection</li> <li>• Speed bypass frequencies including semi-automatic set-up of these frequencies (for example, to avoid resonance conditions on cooling tower and other fans)</li> </ul>   |
| 5**   | Digital In/Out            | <p>Parameters used to program the functions of all</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• digital inputs</li> <li>• digital outputs</li> <li>• relay outputs</li> <li>• pulse inputs</li> <li>• pulse outputs</li> </ul> <p>for terminals on the control card and all option cards.</p>   |
| 6**   | Analog In/Out             | <p>Parameters used to program the functions associated with all analog inputs and analog outputs for the terminals on the control card and General Purpose I/O option (MCB 101) including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Analog input live zero timeout function (which for example can be used to command a cooling tower fan to operate at full speed if the condenser water return sensor fails)</li> <li>• Scaling of the analog input signals (for example to match the analog input to the mA and pressure range of a static duct pressure sensor)</li> <li>• Filter time constant to filter out electrical noise on the analog signal which can sometimes occur when long cables are installed</li> <li>• Function and scaling of the analog outputs (for example to provide an analog output representing motor current or kW to an analog input of a DDC controller)</li> <li>• Configure the analog outputs to be controlled by the BMS via a high-level interface (HLI) (for example, to control a chilled water valve) including ability to define a default value of these outputs in the event of the HLI failing</li> </ul> |
| 8**   | Communication and Options | Parameters used for configuring and monitoring functions associated with the serial communications/high level interface to the frequency converter  |
| 9**   | Profibus                  | Parameters only applicable when a Profibus option is installed.   |
| 10**  | CAN Fieldbus              | Parameters only applicable when a DeviceNet option is installed.  |
| 11**  | LonWorks                  | Parameters only applicable when a Lonworks option is installed.   |

| Group | Title                  | Function   |
|-------|------------------------|--|
| 13**  | Smart Logic Controller | <p>Parameters used to configure the built-in Smart Logic Controller (SLC). The SLC can be used for</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• simple functions such as               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- comparators (for example, if running above x Hz, activate output relay)</li> <li>- timers (for example, when a start signal is applied, first activate output relay to open supply air damper and wait x seconds before ramping up)</li> </ul> </li> <li>• complex sequence of user-defined actions executed by the SLC when the associated user-defined event is evaluated as TRUE by the SLC. For example, initiate an economiser mode in a simple AHU cooling application control scheme where there is no BMS. For such an application, the SLC can monitor the outside air relative humidity. If the relative humidity is below a defined value, the supply air temperature setpoint could be automatically increased. With the frequency converter monitoring the outside air relative humidity and supply air temperature via its analog inputs, and controlling the chilled water valve via one of the extended PI(D) loops and an analog output, it would then modulate that valve to maintain a higher supply air temperature).</li> </ul> <p>The SLC can often replace the need for other external control equipment.</p> |
| 14**  | Special Functions      | <p>Parameters used to configure special functions of the frequency converter including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Setting of the switching frequency to reduce audible noise from the motor (sometimes required for fan applications)</li> <li>• Kinetic back-up function (especially useful for critical applications in semi-conductor installations where performance under mains dip/mains loss is important)</li> <li>• Mains imbalance protection</li> <li>• Automatic reset (to avoid the need for a manual reset of Alarms)</li> <li>• Energy optimisation parameters. These parameters typically do not need changing but enable fine-tuning of this automatic function ensuring that the frequency converter and motor combination operate at their optimum efficiency.</li> <li>• Autoderating functions (which enable the frequency converter to continue operation at reduced performance under extreme operating conditions ensuring maximum up time)</li> </ul>  |
| 15**  | FC Information         | <p>Parameters providing operating data and other frequency converter information including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operating and running hour counters</li> <li>• kWh counter; resetting of the running and kWh counters</li> <li>• Alarm/fault log (where the past 10 alarms are logged along with any associated value and time)</li> <li>• Frequency converter and option card identification parameters such as code number and software version</li> </ul>  |
| 16**  | Data Readouts          | <p>Read-only parameters which display the status/value of many operating variables which can be displayed on the LCP or viewed in this parameter group. These parameters can be useful during commissioning when interfacing with a BMS via a high-level interface.</p>  |
| 18**  | Info & Readouts        | <p>Read-only parameters which display the last 10 preventive maintenance log items, actions and time and the value of analog inputs and outputs on the Analog I/O option card which can be useful during commissioning when interfacing with a BMS via a high-level interface.</p>   |

| Group | Title                   | Function  |
|-------|-------------------------|---|
| 20**  | FC Closed Loop          | <p>Parameters used to configure the closed loop PI(D) controller which controls the speed of the pump, fan or compressor in closed loop mode including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Defining where each of the 3 possible feedback signals come from (for example, which analog input or the BMS HLI)</li> <li>Conversion factor for each of the feedback signals. An example could be a pressure signal used for indication of flow in an AHU or converting from pressure to temperature in a compressor application)</li> <li>Engineering unit for the reference and feedback (for example, Pa, kPa, m Wg, in Wg, bar, m3/s, m3/h, °C, °F etc)</li> <li>The function (for example, sum, difference, average, minimum or maximum) used to calculate the resulting feedback for single zone applications or the control philosophy for multi-zone applications</li> <li>Programming of the setpoints</li> <li>Manual or auto-tuning of the PI(D) loop</li> </ul>                           |
| 21**  | Extended Closed Loop    | <p>Parameters used to configure the 3 extended closed loop PI(D) controllers. The controllers can for example be used to control external actuators (for example, chilled water valve to maintain supply air temperature in a VAV system) including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Engineering unit for the reference and feedback of each controller (for example, °C, °F etc)</li> <li>Defining the range of the reference/setpoint for each controller</li> <li>Defining where each of the references/setpoints and feedback signals come from (for example, which analog input or the BMS HLI)</li> <li>Programming of the setpoint and manual or auto-tuning of each of the PI(D) controllers.</li> </ul>   |
| 22**  | Application Functions   | <p>Parameters used to monitor, protect and control pumps, fans and compressors including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No-flow detection and protection of pumps (including auto-setup of this function)</li> <li>Dry pump protection</li> <li>End-of-curve detection and protection of pumps</li> <li>Sleep mode (especially useful for cooling tower and booster pump sets)</li> <li>Broken belt detection (typically used for fan applications to detect no air flow instead of using a <math>\Delta p</math> switch installed across the fan)</li> <li>Short cycle protection of compressors and pump flow compensation of setpoint (especially useful for secondary chilled water pump applications where the <math>\Delta p</math> sensor has been installed close to the pump and not across the furthest most significant load(s) in the system</li> <li>Using this function can compensate for the sensor installation and help to realise the maximum energy savings).</li> </ul> |
| 23**  | Time Based Functions    | <p>Time-based parameters including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Parameters used to initiate daily or weekly actions based on the built-in real time clock. The actions could be change of setpoint for night set back mode or start/stop of the pump/fan/compressor start/stop of an external equipment)</li> <li>Preventive maintenance functions which can be based on running or operating hour time intervals or on specific dates and times</li> <li>Energy log (especially useful in retrofit applications or where information of the actual historical load (kW) on the pump/fan/compressor is of interest)</li> <li>Trending (useful in retrofit or other applications where there is an interest to log operating power, current, frequency or speed of the pump/fan/compressor for analysis and a payback counter</li> </ul>  |
| 24**  | Application Functions 2 | <p>Parameters used to set up fire mode and/or to control a bypass contactor/starter if designed into the system.</p>  |

| Group | Title                     | Function  |
|-------|---------------------------|---|
| 25**  | Cascade Controller        | Parameters used to configure and monitor the built-in pump cascade controller (typically used for pump booster sets).   |
| 26**  | Analog I/O Option MCB 109 | Parameters used to configure the Analog I/O option (MCB 109) including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Definition of the analog input types (for example, voltage, Pt1000 or Ni1000)</li> <li>• Scaling and definition of the analog output functions and scaling.</li> </ul> |

Table 6.1 Parameter Groups

Parameter descriptions and selections are displayed on the graphic (GLCP) or numeric (NLCP) display. (See relevant section for details.) Access the parameters by pressing [Quick Menu] or [Main Menu] on the LCP. The Quick Menu is used primarily for commissioning the unit at start-up by providing the parameters necessary to start operation. The Main Menu provides access to all parameters for detailed application programming.

All digital input/output and analog input/output terminals are multifunctional. All terminals have factory default functions suitable for most HVAC applications but if other special functions are required, they must be programmed as explained in parameter group 5-\*\* *Digital In/out* or 6-\*\* *Analog In/out*.

## 6.1.2 Quick Menu Mode

### Parameter data

The graphical display (GLCP) provides access to all parameters listed under the Quick Menus. The numeric display (NLCP) only provides access to the Quick Set-up parameters. To set parameters pressing [Quick Menu] - enter or change parameter data or settings in accordance with the following procedure

1. Press [Quick Menu].
2. Press [▲] and [▼] to find the parameter to change.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [▲] and [▼] to select the correct parameter setting.
5. Press [OK].
6. To move to a different digit within a parameter setting, use the [◀] and [▶].
7. Highlighted area indicates digit selected for change.
8. Press [Cancel] to disregard change, or press [OK] to accept change and enter the new setting.

### Example of changing parameter data

Assume parameter 22-60 *Broken Belt Function* is set to [Off]. To monitor the fan-belt condition, non-broken or broken, follow this procedure

1. Press [Quick Menu].
2. Select Function Set-ups with [▼].
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [▼] to select Application Settings .
5. Press [OK].
6. Press [OK] again for Fan Functions.
7. Select Broken Belt Function by pressing [OK].
8. Press [▼], to select [2] *Trip*.

If a broken fan-belt is detected, the frequency converter trips .

### Select [My Personal Menu] to display personal parameters

For example, an AHU or pump OEM may have pre-programmed personal parameters to be in My Personal Menu during factory commissioning to make on-site commissioning/fine tuning simpler. These parameters are selected in 0-25 *My Personal Menu*. Up to 20 different parameters can be programmed in this menu.

### Select [Changes Made] to get information about

- The last 10 changes. Press [▲] and [▼] to scroll between the last 10 changed parameters.
- The changes made since default setting.

### [Loggings]

shows information about the display line readouts. The information is shown as graphs.

Only display parameters selected in 0-20 *Display Line 1.1 Small* and 0-24 *Display Line 3 Large* can be viewed. It is possible to store up to 120 samples in the memory for later reference.

### Quick Set-up

#### Efficient parameter set-up for HVAC applications

The parameters can easily be set up for most HVAC applications only by using the Quick Set-up option. After pressing [Quick Menu], the different options in the Quick Menu are listed. See also *Illustration 6.1* and *Table 6.3* to *Table 6.6*.

#### Example of using the Quick Set-up option

To set the ramp down time to 100 s:



1. Select Quick Set-up. *Parameter 0-01 Language* in Quick Set-up appears.
2. Press [▼] repeatedly until *parameter 3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time* appears with the default setting of 20 s.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [◀] to highlight the third digit before the comma.
5. Change '0' to '1' by pressing [▲].
6. Press [▶] to highlight the digit '2'.
7. Change '2' to '0' by pressing [▼].
8. Press [OK].

The new ramp-down time is now set to 100 s. Do the set-up in the order listed.

**NOTICE**

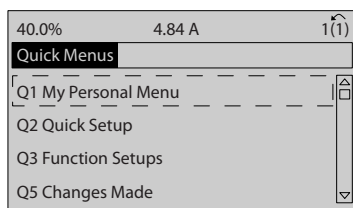


Illustration 6.1 Quick Menu View

The Quick Set-up menu gives access to the 18 most important set-up parameters of the frequency converter. After programming, the frequency converter is ready for operation. The 18 Quick Set-up parameters are shown in Table 6.2.

| Parameter                                   | [Units] |
|---|---------|
| Parameter 0-01 Language                     |         |
| Parameter 1-20 Motor Power [kW]             | [kW]    |
| Parameter 1-21 Motor Power [HP]             | [Hp]    |
| Parameter 1-22 Motor Voltage*               | [V]     |
| Parameter 1-23 Motor Frequency              | [Hz]    |
| Parameter 1-24 Motor Current                | [A]     |
| Parameter 1-25 Motor Nominal Speed          | [RPM]   |
| Parameter 1-28 Motor Rotation Check         | [Hz]    |
| Parameter 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time          | [s]     |
| Parameter 3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time        | [s]     |
| Parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]  | [RPM]   |
| Parameter 4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]*  | [Hz]    |
| Parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] | [RPM]   |
| Parameter 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]* | [Hz]    |
| 3-19 Jog Speed [RPM]                        | [RPM]   |
| Parameter 3-11 Jog Speed [Hz]*              | [Hz]    |
| 5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input              |         |
| Parameter 5-40 Function Relay**             |         |

Table 6.2 Quick Set-up Parameters

\*The display showing depends on the selections made in 0-02 Motor Speed Unit and 0-03 Regional Settings. The default settings of 0-02 Motor Speed Unit and 0-03 Regional Settings depend on which region of the world the frequency converter is supplied to but can be reprogrammed as required.

\*\* Parameter 5-40 Function Relay is an array. Select between [0] Relay1 or [1] Relay2 . Standard setting is [0] Relay1 with the default option [9] Alarm.

For a detailed information about settings and programming, see the VLT® HVAC Drive Programming Guide

**NOTICE**

If [0] No Operation is selected in 5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input, no connection to +24 V on terminal 27 is necessary to enable start.

If [2] Coast Inverse (factory default value) is selected in 5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input, a connection to +24 V is necessary to enable start.

| 0-01 Language |                  |  |
|---------------|------------------|--|
| Option:       | Function:        |  |
|               |                  | Defines the language to be used in the display. The frequency converter is delivered with 4 different language packages. English and German are included in all packages. English cannot be erased or manipulated. |
| [0] *         | English          | Part of Language packages 1–4  |
| [1]           | Deutsch          | Part of Language packages 1–4  |
| [2]           | Francais         | Part of Language package 1   |
| [3]           | Dansk            | Part of Language package 1   |
| [4]           | Spanish          | Part of Language package 1   |
| [5]           | Italiano         | Part of Language package 1   |
| [6]           | Svenska          | Part of Language package 1   |
| [7]           | Nederlands       | Part of Language package 1   |
| [10]          | Chinese          | Part of Language package 2   |
| [20]          | Suomi            | Part of Language package 1   |
| [22]          | English US       | Part of Language package 4   |
| [27]          | Greek            | Part of Language package 4   |
| [28]          | Bras.port        | Part of Language package 4   |
| [36]          | Slovenian        | Part of Language package 3   |
| [39]          | Korean           | Part of Language package 2   |
| [40]          | Japanese         | Part of Language package 2   |
| [41]          | Turkish          | Part of Language package 4   |
| [42]          | Trad.Chinese     | Part of Language package 2   |
| [43]          | Bulgarian        | Part of Language package 3   |
| [44]          | Srpski           | Part of Language package 3   |
| [45]          | Romanian         | Part of Language package 3   |
| [46]          | Magyar           | Part of Language package 3   |
| [47]          | Czech            | Part of Language package 3   |
| [48]          | Polski           | Part of Language package 4   |
| [49]          | Russian          | Part of Language package 3   |
| [50]          | Thai             | Part of Language package 2   |
| [51]          | Bahasa Indonesia | Part of Language package 2   |
| [52]          | Hrvatski         | Part of Language package 3   |

| 1-20 Motor Power [kW]                 |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| Range:                                | Function:  |  |
| Size related*<br>[ 0.09 - 3000.00 kW] | Enter the nominal motor power in kW according to the motor nameplate data. The default value corresponds to the nominal rated output of the unit. Depending on the selections made in <i>0-03 Regional Settings</i> , either <i>parameter 1-20 Motor Power [kW]</i> or <i>parameter 1-21 Motor Power [HP]</i> is made invisible. |  |

| 1-21 Motor Power [HP]                 |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| Range:                                | Function:  |  |
| Size related*<br>[ 0.09 - 3000.00 hp] | Enter the nominal motor power in hp according to the motor nameplate data. The default value corresponds to the nominal rated output of the unit. Depending on the selections made in <i>0-03 Regional Settings</i> , either <i>parameter 1-20 Motor Power [kW]</i> or <i>parameter 1-21 Motor Power [HP]</i> is made invisible. |  |

| 1-22 Motor Voltage              |  |  |
|---------------------------------|--|--|
| Range:                          | Function:  |  |
| Size related*<br>[ 10 - 1000 V] | Enter the nominal motor voltage according to the motor nameplate data. The default value corresponds to the nominal rated output of the frequency converter. |  |

| 1-23 Motor Frequency            |   |  |
|---------------------------------|---|--|
| Range:                          | Function:   |  |
| Size related*<br>[20 - 1000 Hz] | Select the motor frequency value from the motor nameplate data. For 87 Hz operation with 230/400 V motors, set the nameplate data for 230 V/50 Hz. Adapt <i>parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]</i> and <i>3-03 Maximum Reference</i> to the 87 Hz application. |  |

| 1-24 Motor Current                    |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| Range:                                | Function:  |  |
| Size related*<br>[ 0.10 - 10000.00 A] | Enter the nominal motor current value from the motor nameplate data. This data is used for calculating motor torque, thermal motor protection etc. |  |

| 1-25 Motor Nominal Speed |                   |   |
|--------------------------|-------------------|---|
| Range:                   |                   | Function:   |
| Size related*            | [100 - 60000 RPM] | Enter the nominal motor speed value from the motor nameplate data. This data is used for calculating automatic motor compensations. |

| 1-28 Motor Rotation Check |         |   |
|---------------------------|---------|---|
| Option:                   |         | Function:   |
|                           |         | Following installation and connection of the motor, this function allows the correct motor rotation direction to be verified. Enabling this function overrides any bus commands or digital inputs, except external interlock and Safe Torque Off (STO) (if included). |
| [0] *                     | Off     | Motor rotation check is not active.   |
| [1]                       | Enabled | Motor rotation check is enabled.  |

**⚠ WARNING**

Remove mains power before disconnecting motor phase cables.

**NOTICE**

Once the motor rotation check is enabled the display shows: *Note! Motor may run in wrong direction.* Pressing [OK], [Back] or [Cancel] dismisses the message and displays a new message: "Press [Hand On] to start the motor. Press [Cancel] to abort". Pressing [Hand On] starts the motor at 5 Hz in forward direction and the display shows: "Motor is running. Check if motor rotation direction is correct. Press [Off] to stop the motor". Pressing [Off] stops the motor and resets *parameter 1-28 Motor Rotation Check*. If motor rotation direction is incorrect, interchange 2 motor phase cables.

| 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time |                  |  |
|--------------------------|------------------|--|
| Range:                   |                  | Function:  |
| Size related*            | [ 1.00 - 3600 s] | Enter the ramp-up time, that is, the acceleration time from 0 RPM to <i>parameter 1-25 Motor Nominal Speed</i> . Select a ramp-up time such that the output current does not exceed the current limit in <i>4-18 Current Limit</i> during ramping. See ramp-down time in <i>parameter 3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time</i> . |

$$par.3 - 41 = \frac{t_{acc} \times n_{nom} [par.1 - 25]}{ref [RPM]} [s]$$

| 3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time |                  |  |
|----------------------------|------------------|--|
| Range:                     |                  | Function:  |
| Size related*              | [ 1.00 - 3600 s] | Enter the ramp-down time, that is, the deceleration time from <i>parameter 1-25 Motor Nominal Speed</i> to 0 |

| 3-42 Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time |  |   |
|----------------------------|--|---|
| Range:                     |  | Function:   |
|                            |  | RPM. Select a ramp-down time preventing overvoltage from arising in the inverter due to regenerative operation of the motor. The ramp-down time should also be long enough to prevent that the generated current exceeds the current limit set in <i>4-18 Current Limit</i> . See ramp-up time in <i>parameter 3-41 Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time</i> . |

$$par.3 - 42 = \frac{t_{dec} \times n_{nom} [par.1 - 25]}{ref [RPM]} [s]$$

| 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz] |                             |   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| Range:                           |                             | Function:   |
| Size related*                    | [ par. 4-12 - par. 4-19 Hz] | Enter the max. limit for motor speed in Hz. <i>Parameter 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]</i> can match the manufacturer's recommended maximum motor speed. The motor speed high limit must exceed the value in <i>parameter 4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]</i> . The output frequency must not exceed 10% of the switching frequency. |

**NOTICE**

Max. output frequency cannot exceed 10% of the inverter switching frequency (*parameter 14-01 Switching Frequency*).

| 4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz] |                     |  |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Range:                          |                     | Function:  |
| Size related*                   | [ 0 - par. 4-14 Hz] | Enter the minimum limit for motor speed in Hz. The motor speed low limit can be set to correspond to the minimum output frequency of the motor shaft. The speed low limit must not exceed the setting in <i>parameter 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]</i> . |

| 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] |                          |   |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| Range:                            |                          | Function:   |
| Size related*                     | [ par. 4-11 - 60000 RPM] | Enter the maximum limit for motor speed in RPM. The motor speed high limit can be set to correspond to the manufacturer's maximum rated motor. The motor speed high limit must exceed the setting in <i>parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]</i> . The parameter name appears as either <i>parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]</i> or <i>parameter 4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]</i> , depending on <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the settings of other parameters in the Main Menu, and</li> <li>default settings based on geographical location.</li> </ul> |

**NOTICE**

Max. output frequency cannot exceed 10% of the inverter switching frequency (*parameter 14-01 Switching Frequency*).

**NOTICE**

Any changes in *parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]* reset the value in *parameter 4-53 Warning Speed High* to the same value as set in *parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]*.

6

| 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM] |                      |   |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|---|
| Range:                           | Function:            |   |
| Size related*                    | [ 0 - par. 4-13 RPM] | Enter the minimum limit for motor speed in RPM. The motor speed low limit can be set to correspond to the manufacturer's recommended minimum motor speed. The motor speed low limit must not exceed the setting in <i>parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]</i> . |

| 3-11 Jog Speed [Hz] |                     |  |
|---------------------|---------------------|--|
| Range:              | Function:           |  |
| Size related*       | [ 0 - par. 4-14 Hz] | The jog speed is a fixed output speed at which the frequency converter is running when the jog function is activated. See also <i>3-80 Jog Ramp Time</i> . |

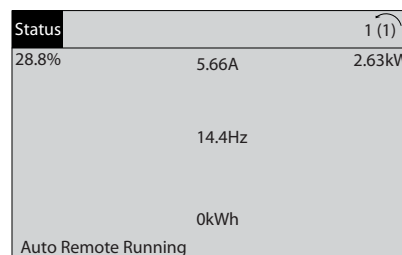
6.1.3 Function Setups

The Function Setup provides quick and easy access to all parameters required for most HVAC applications including

- most VAV and CAV supply and return fans
- cooling tower fans
- primary pumps
- secondary pumps
- condenser water pumps
- other pump, fan and compressor applications.

How to access Function Setup - example

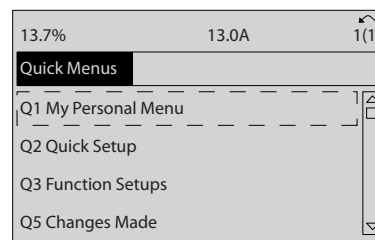
1. Turn on the frequency converter (yellow LED lights).



130BT110.11

Illustration 6.2 Frequency Converter Turned on

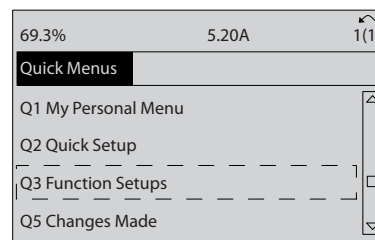
2. Press [Quick Menus].



130BT111.10

Illustration 6.3 Quick Menu Selected

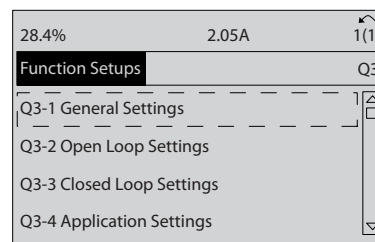
3. Press [▲] and [▼] to scroll down to Function Setups. Press [OK].



130BT112.10

Illustration 6.4 Scrolling to Function Set-up

4. Function Setups options appear. Select Q3-1 General Settings. Press [OK].



130BT113.10

Illustration 6.5 Function Setups Options

- Press [▲] and [▼] to scroll down to that is, Q3-11 Analog Outputs. Press [OK].

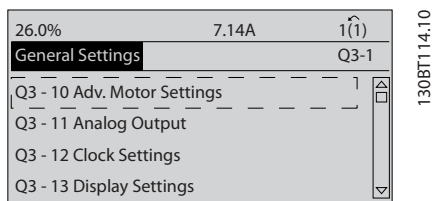


Illustration 6.6 General Settings Options

- Press [▲] and [▼] to select between the different options. Press [OK].

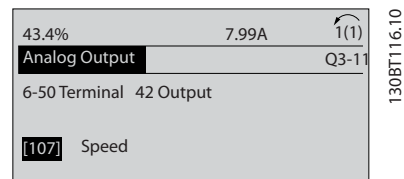


Illustration 6.8 Setting a Parameter

- Select parameter 6-50 Terminal 42 Output. Press [OK].

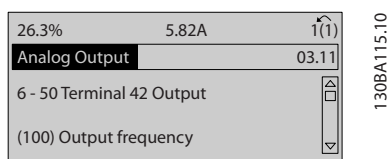


Illustration 6.7 Parameter parameter 6-50 Terminal 42 Output Selected

**Function Set-ups parameters**

The Function Set-ups parameters are grouped in the following way

| Q3-10 Adv. Motor Settings                       | Q3-11 Analog Output                         | Q3-12 Clock Settings      | Q3-13 Display Settings      |
|---|---|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Parameter 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection         | Parameter 6-50 Terminal 42 Output           | 0-70 Date and Time        | 0-20 Display Line 1.1 Small |
| Parameter 1-93 Thermistor Source                | Parameter 6-51 Terminal 42 Output Min Scale | 0-71 Date Format          | 0-21 Display Line 1.2 Small |
| Parameter 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA) | Parameter 6-52 Terminal 42 Output Max Scale | 0-72 Time Format          | 0-22 Display Line 1.3 Small |
| Parameter 14-01 Switching Frequency             |   | 0-74 DST/Summertime       | 0-23 Display Line 2 Large   |
| Parameter 4-53 Warning Speed High               |   | 0-76 DST/Summertime Start | 0-24 Display Line 3 Large   |
|   |   | 0-77 DST/Summertime End   | 0-37 Display Text 1         |
|   |   |                           | 0-38 Display Text 2         |
|   |   |                           | 0-39 Display Text 3         |

Table 6.3 Q3-1 General Settings

| Q3-20 Digital Reference          | Q3-21 Analog Reference                            |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Parameter 3-02 Minimum Reference | Parameter 3-02 Minimum Reference                  |
| 3-03 Maximum Reference           | 3-03 Maximum Reference                            |
| Parameter 3-10 Preset Reference  | Parameter 6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage            |
| 5-13 Terminal 29 Digital Input   | Parameter 6-11 Terminal 53 High Voltage           |
| 5-14 Terminal 32 Digital Input   | 6-12 Terminal 53 Low Current                      |
| 5-15 Terminal 33 Digital Input   | 6-13 Terminal 53 High Current                     |
|                                  | Parameter 6-14 Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value  |
|                                  | Parameter 6-15 Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value |

Table 6.4 Q3-2 Open Loop Settings

| Q3-30 Single Zone Int. Set Point                  | Q3-31 Single Zone Ext. Set Point                  | Q3-32 Multi Zone / Adv                            |
|---|---|---|
| Parameter 1-00 Configuration Mode                 | Parameter 1-00 Configuration Mode                 | Parameter 1-00 Configuration Mode                 |
| 20-12 Reference/Feedback Unit                     | 20-12 Reference/Feedback Unit                     | Parameter 3-15 Reference 1 Source                 |
| 20-13 Minimum Reference/Feedb.                    | 20-13 Minimum Reference/Feedb.                    | Parameter 3-16 Reference 2 Source                 |
| 20-14 Maximum Reference/Feedb.                    | 20-14 Maximum Reference/Feedb.                    | Parameter 20-00 Feedback 1 Source                 |
| 6-22 Terminal 54 Low Current                      | Parameter 6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage            | Parameter 20-01 Feedback 1 Conversion             |
| Parameter 6-24 Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. Value  | Parameter 6-11 Terminal 53 High Voltage           | 20-02 Feedback 1 Source Unit                      |
| Parameter 6-25 Terminal 54 High Ref./Feedb. Value | 6-12 Terminal 53 Low Current                      | Parameter 20-03 Feedback 2 Source                 |
| Parameter 6-26 Terminal 54 Filter Time Constant   | 6-13 Terminal 53 High Current                     | Parameter 20-04 Feedback 2 Conversion             |
| Parameter 6-27 Terminal 54 Live Zero              | Parameter 6-14 Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value  | 20-05 Feedback 2 Source Unit                      |
| Parameter 6-00 Live Zero Timeout Time             | Parameter 6-15 Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value | Parameter 20-06 Feedback 3 Source                 |
| Parameter 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function         | 6-22 Terminal 54 Low Current                      | Parameter 20-07 Feedback 3 Conversion             |
| Parameter 20-21 Setpoint 1                        | Parameter 6-24 Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. Value  | 20-08 Feedback 3 Source Unit                      |
| Parameter 20-81 PID Normal/ Inverse Control       | Parameter 6-25 Terminal 54 High Ref./Feedb. Value | 20-12 Reference/Feedback Unit                     |
| 20-82 PID Start Speed [RPM]                       | Parameter 6-26 Terminal 54 Filter Time Constant   | 20-13 Minimum Reference/Feedb.                    |
| 20-83 PID Start Speed [Hz]                        | Parameter 6-27 Terminal 54 Live Zero              | 20-14 Maximum Reference/Feedb.                    |
| Parameter 20-93 PID Proportional Gain             | Parameter 6-00 Live Zero Timeout Time             | Parameter 6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage            |
| Parameter 20-94 PID Integral Time                 | Parameter 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function         | Parameter 6-11 Terminal 53 High Voltage           |
| 20-70 Closed Loop Type                            | Parameter 20-81 PID Normal/ Inverse Control       | 6-12 Terminal 53 Low Current                      |
| 20-71 PID Performance                             | 20-82 PID Start Speed [RPM]                       | 6-13 Terminal 53 High Current                     |
| 20-72 PID Output Change                           | 20-83 PID Start Speed [Hz]                        | Parameter 6-14 Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value  |
| 20-73 Minimum Feedback Level                      | Parameter 20-93 PID Proportional Gain             | Parameter 6-15 Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value |
| 20-74 Maximum Feedback Level                      | Parameter 20-94 PID Integral Time                 | Parameter 6-16 Terminal 53 Filter Time Constant   |
| 20-79 PID Autotuning                              | 20-70 Closed Loop Type                            | Parameter 6-17 Terminal 53 Live Zero              |
|   | 20-71 PID Performance                             | Parameter 6-20 Terminal 54 Low Voltage            |
|   | 20-72 PID Output Change                           | Parameter 6-21 Terminal 54 High Voltage           |
|   | 20-73 Minimum Feedback Level                      | 6-22 Terminal 54 Low Current                      |
|   | 20-74 Maximum Feedback Level                      | 6-23 Terminal 54 High Current                     |
|   | 20-79 PID Autotuning                              | Parameter 6-24 Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. Value  |
|   |   | Parameter 6-25 Terminal 54 High Ref./Feedb. Value |
|   |   | Parameter 6-26 Terminal 54 Filter Time Constant   |
|   |   | Parameter 6-27 Terminal 54 Live Zero              |
|   |   | Parameter 6-00 Live Zero Timeout Time             |
|   |   | Parameter 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function         |
|   |   | Parameter 4-56 Warning Feedback Low               |
|   |   | Parameter 4-57 Warning Feedback High              |
|   |   | Parameter 20-20 Feedback Function                 |
|   |   | Parameter 20-21 Setpoint 1                        |
|   |   | Parameter 20-22 Setpoint 2                        |

| Q3-30 Single Zone Int. Set Point | Q3-31 Single Zone Ext. Set Point | Q3-32 Multi Zone / Adv                      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|
|                                  |                                  | Parameter 20-81 PID Normal/ Inverse Control |
|                                  |                                  | 20-82 PID Start Speed [RPM]                 |
|                                  |                                  | 20-83 PID Start Speed [Hz]                  |
|                                  |                                  | Parameter 20-93 PID Proportional Gain       |
|                                  |                                  | Parameter 20-94 PID Integral Time           |
|                                  |                                  | 20-70 Closed Loop Type                      |
|                                  |                                  | 20-71 PID Performance                       |
|                                  |                                  | 20-72 PID Output Change                     |
|                                  |                                  | 20-73 Minimum Feedback Level                |
|                                  |                                  | 20-74 Maximum Feedback Level                |
|                                  |                                  | 20-79 PID Autotuning                        |

Table 6.5 Q3-3 Closed Loop Settings

| Q3-40 Fan Functions                    | Q3-41 Pump Functions                    | Q3-42 Compressor Functions              |
|--|---|---|
| Parameter 22-60 Broken Belt Function   | 22-20 Low Power Auto Set-up             | Parameter 1-03 Torque Characteristics   |
| Parameter 22-61 Broken Belt Torque     | Parameter 22-21 Low Power Detection     | Parameter 1-71 Start Delay              |
| Parameter 22-62 Broken Belt Delay      | Parameter 22-22 Low Speed Detection     | Parameter 22-75 Short Cycle Protection  |
| Parameter 4-64 Semi-Auto Bypass Set-up | Parameter 22-23 No-Flow Function        | Parameter 22-76 Interval between Starts |
| Parameter 1-03 Torque Characteristics  | Parameter 22-24 No-Flow Delay           | Parameter 22-77 Minimum Run Time        |
| Parameter 22-22 Low Speed Detection    | Parameter 22-40 Minimum Run Time        | Parameter 5-01 Terminal 27 Mode         |
| Parameter 22-23 No-Flow Function       | Parameter 22-41 Minimum Sleep Time      | Parameter 5-02 Terminal 29 Mode         |
| Parameter 22-24 No-Flow Delay          | Parameter 22-42 Wake-up Speed [RPM]     | 5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input          |
| Parameter 22-40 Minimum Run Time       | 22-43 Wake-up Speed [Hz]                | 5-13 Terminal 29 Digital Input          |
| Parameter 22-41 Minimum Sleep Time     | 22-44 Wake-up Ref./FB Difference        | Parameter 5-40 Function Relay           |
| Parameter 22-42 Wake-up Speed [RPM]    | 22-45 Setpoint Boost                    | Parameter 1-73 Flying Start             |
| 22-43 Wake-up Speed [Hz]               | 22-46 Maximum Boost Time                | 1-86 Trip Speed Low [RPM]               |
| 22-44 Wake-up Ref./FB Difference       | Parameter 22-26 Dry Pump Function       | 1-87 Trip Speed Low [Hz]                |
| 22-45 Setpoint Boost                   | 22-27 Dry Pump Delay                    |   |
| 22-46 Maximum Boost Time               | 22-80 Flow Compensation                 |   |
| Parameter 2-10 Brake Function          | 22-81 Square-linear Curve Approximation |   |
| 2-16 AC brake Max. Current             | 22-82 Work Point Calculation            |   |
| Parameter 2-17 Over-voltage Control    | 22-83 Speed at No-Flow [RPM]            |   |
| Parameter 1-73 Flying Start            | 22-84 Speed at No-Flow [Hz]             |   |
| Parameter 1-71 Start Delay             | 22-85 Speed at Design Point [RPM]       |   |
| Parameter 1-80 Function at Stop        | 22-86 Speed at Design Point [Hz]        |   |
| Parameter 2-00 DC Hold/Preheat Current | 22-87 Pressure at No-Flow Speed         |   |
| Parameter 4-10 Motor Speed Direction   | 22-88 Pressure at Rated Speed           |   |
|  | 22-89 Flow at Design Point              |   |
|  | 22-90 Flow at Rated Speed               |   |
|  | Parameter 1-03 Torque Characteristics   |   |
|  | Parameter 1-73 Flying Start             |   |

Table 6.6 Q3-4 Application Settings

| 1-00 Configuration Mode |             |   |
|-------------------------|-------------|---|
| Option:                 | Function:   |   |
|                         |             | <b>NOTICE</b><br>This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running.  |
| [0]                     | Open Loop   | Motor speed is determined by applying a speed reference or by setting desired speed when in Hand Mode.<br>Open loop is also used if the frequency converter is of a closed loop control system based on an external PID controller providing a speed reference signal as output.                                |
| [3]                     | Closed Loop | Motor speed is determined by a reference from the built-in PID controller varying the motor speed as of a closed loop control process (e.g. constant pressure or flow). The PID controller must be configured in parameter group 20-** Feedback or via the Function Set-ups accessed by pressing [Quick Menus]. |

**NOTICE**

When set for closed loop, the commands reversing and start reversing do not reverse the motor direction.

| 1-03 Torque Characteristics |                       |   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Option:                     | Function:             |   |
| [0]                         | Compressor torque     | For speed control of screw and scroll compressors. Provides a voltage which is optimised for a constant torque load characteristic of the motor in the entire range down to 10 Hz.  |
| [1]                         | Variable torque       | For speed control of centrifugal pumps and fans. Also to be used when controlling more than one motor from the same frequency converter (for example, multiple condenser fans or cooling tower fans). Provides a voltage which is optimised for a squared torque load characteristic of the motor.  |
| [2]                         | Auto Energy Optim. CT | For optimum energy-efficient speed control of screw and scroll compressors. Provides a voltage which is optimised for a constant torque load characteristic of the motor in the entire range down to 15 Hz. In addition, the AEO feature adapts the voltage exactly to the current load situation, thereby reducing energy consumption and audible noise from the motor. To obtain optimum performance, set the motor power factor cos phi correctly. This value is set in 14-43 Motor Cosphi. The parameter has a default value which is automatically adjusted when the motor data is programmed. These settings typically ensure optimum motor voltage, but if the |

| 1-03 Torque Characteristics |                       |   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Option:                     | Function:             |   |
|                             |                       | motor power factor cos phi requires tuning, an AMA function can be carried out using parameter 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA). It is rarely necessary to adjust the motor power factor parameter manually.   |
| [3]                         | Auto Energy Optim. VT | For optimum energy efficient speed control of centrifugal pumps and fans. Provides a voltage optimised for a squared torque load characteristic of the motor. In addition, the AEO feature adapts the voltage exactly to the current load situation, thereby reducing energy consumption and audible noise from the motor. To obtain optimum performance, set the motor power factor cos phi correctly. This value is set in 14-43 Motor Cosphi. The parameter has a default value and is automatically adjusted when the motor data is programmed. These settings typically ensure optimum motor voltage, but if the motor power factor cos phi requires tuning, an AMA function can be carried out using parameter 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA). It is rarely necessary to adjust the motor power factor parameter manually. |

**NOTICE**

Parameter 1-03 Torque Characteristics have no effect when 1-10 Motor Construction = [1] PM, non-salient SPM.

**NOTICE**

For pumps or fan applications where the viscosity or density can vary significantly or where excessive flow, for example due to pipe breakage, can occur, select Auto Energy Optim. CT

| 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA) |                     |  |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Option:                               | Function:           |  |
|                                       |                     | <b>NOTICE</b><br>This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running.   |
| [0]                                   | * Off               | No function  |
| [1]                                   | Enable Complete AMA | Performs AMA of the stator resistance $R_s$ , the rotor resistance $R_r$ , the stator leakage reactance $X_1$ , the rotor leakage reactance $X_2$ and the main reactance $X_h$ . |
| [2]                                   | Enable Reduced AMA  | Performs a reduced AMA of the stator resistance $R_s$ in the system only. Select this option if an LC filter is used between the frequency converter and the motor.              |



**NOTICE**

Parameter 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA) have no effect when 1-10 Motor Construction = [1] PM, non-salient SPM.

Activate the AMA function by pressing [Hand On] after selecting [1] or [2]. See also the section Automatic Motor Adaptation in the Design Guide. After a normal sequence, the display reads: Press [OK] to finish AMA. After pressing [OK], the frequency converter is ready for operation.

**NOTICE**

- For the best adaptation of the frequency converter, run AMA on a cold motor
- AMA cannot be performed while the motor is running

**NOTICE**

Avoid generating external torque during AMA.

**NOTICE**

If one of the settings in parameter group 1-2\* Motor Data is changed, 1-30 Stator Resistance (Rs) to 1-39 Motor Poles return to default settings.

**NOTICE**

Full AMA should be run without filter only while reduced AMA should be run with filter.

See section: Application Examples > Automatic Motor Adaptation in the Design Guide.

| 1-71 Start Delay  |   |  |
|-------------------|---|--|
| Range:            | Function:   |  |
| 00 s* [0 - 120 s] | When the frequency converter receives the start command, it delays the motor start for the time specified in this parameter.<br>The function selected in parameter 1-80 Function at Stop is active in the delay period. |  |

| 1-73 Flying Start |           |  |
|-------------------|-----------|--|
| Option:           | Function: |  |
| [0]               | Disabled  |  |
| [1]               | Enabled   |  |

| 1-73 Flying Start |           |   |
|-------------------|-----------|---|
| Option:           | Function: |   |
| [0]               | Disabled  | Select [0] Disable if this function is not required   |
| [1]               | Enabled   | Select [1] Enable to enable the frequency converter to catch and control a spinning motor.<br><br>The parameter is always set to [1] Enable when 1-10 Motor Construction = [1] PM non-salient.<br>Important related parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1-58 Flystart Test Pulses Current</li> <li>• 1-59 Flystart Test Pulses Frequency</li> <li>• 1-70 PM Start Mode</li> <li>• 2-06 Parking Current</li> <li>• 2-07 Parking Time</li> <li>• 2-03 DC Brake Cut In Speed [RPM]</li> <li>• 2-04 DC Brake Cut In Speed [Hz]</li> <li>• 2-06 Parking Current</li> <li>• 2-07 Parking Time</li> </ul> |

The flying-start function used for PM motors is based on an initial speed estimation. The speed is always estimated as the first thing after an active start signal is given. Based on the setting of 1-70 PM Start Mode the following happens:

1-70 PM Start Mode = [0] Rotor Detection:

If the speed estimate comes out as greater than 0 Hz, the frequency converter catches the motor at that speed and resume normal operation. Otherwise, the frequency converter estimates the rotor position and start normal operation from there.

1-70 PM Start Mode = [1] Parking:

If the speed estimate comes out lower than the setting in 1-59 Flystart Test Pulses Frequency, the parking function is engaged (see 2-06 Parking Current and 2-07 Parking Time). Otherwise, the frequency converter catches the motor at that speed and resume normal operation. Refer to description of 1-70 PM Start Mode for recommended settings.

Current limitations of the flying-start principle used for PM motors:

- The speed range is up to 100% nominal speed or the field weakening speed (which ever is lowest).
- PMSM with high back EMF (>300 VLL(rms)) and high winding inductance (>10 mH) needed more

time for reducing short circuit current to zero and may be susceptible to error in estimation.

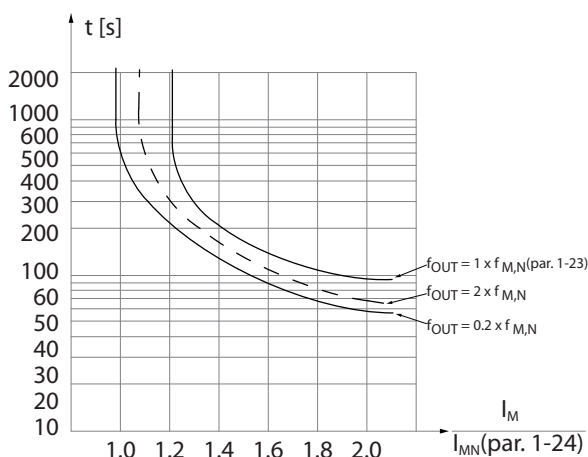
- Current testing limited to a speed range up to 300 Hz. For certain units, the limit is 250 Hz; all 200-240 V units up to and including 2.2 kW and all 380-480 V units up to and including 4 kW.
- Current testing limited to a machine power size up to 22 kW.
- Prepared for salient pole machine (IPMSM) but not yet verified on those types of machine.
- For high-inertia applications (that is, where the load inertia is more than 30 times larger than the motor inertia), use a brake resistor to avoid overvoltage trip during high-speed engagement of the flying-start function.

| 1-80 Function at Stop |                              |  |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|--|
| Option:               | Function:                    |  |
|                       |                              | Select the frequency converter function after a stop command or after the speed is ramped down to the settings in <i>1-81 Min Speed for Function at Stop [RPM]</i> .<br><br>Available selections depend on <i>1-10 Motor Construction</i> :<br>[0] Asynchron:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[0] Coast</li> <li>[1] DC-hold</li> <li>[2] Motor check, warning</li> <li>[6] Motor check, alarm</li> </ul> [1] PM non-salient:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[0] coast</li> </ul> |
| [0] *                 | Coast                        | Leaves motor in free mode.   |
| [1]                   | DC Hold/<br>Motor<br>Preheat | Energises motor with a DC hold current (see <i>parameter 2-00 DC Hold/Preheat Current</i> ).   |
| [2]                   | Motor<br>check,<br>warning   | Issues a warning if the motor is not connected.  |
| [6]                   | Motor<br>check,<br>alarm     | Issues an alarm if the motor is not connected.   |

| 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection |           |   |
|-------------------------------|-----------|---|
| Option:                       | Function: |   |
|                               |           | The frequency converter determines the motor temperature for motor overload protection in 2 different ways: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Via a thermistor sensor connected to one of the analog or digital</li> </ul> |

| 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection |                    |   |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|---|
| Option:                       | Function:          |   |
|                               |                    | inputs ( <i>parameter 1-93 Thermistor Source</i> ). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Via calculation (ETR = Electronic Thermal Relay) of the thermal load, based on the actual load and time. The calculated thermal load is compared with the rated motor current <math>I_{M,N}</math> and the rated motor frequency <math>f_{M,N}</math>. The calculations estimate the need for a lower load at lower speed due to less cooling from the fan incorporated in the motor.</li> </ul> |
| [0]                           | No protection      | If the motor is continuously overloaded, and no warning or trip of frequency converter is wanted.   |
| [1]                           | Thermistor warning | Activates a warning when the connected thermistor in the motor reacts in the event of motor overtemperature.  |
| [2]                           | Thermistor trip    | Stops (trips) the frequency converter when the connected thermistor in the motor reacts in the event of motor overtemperature.  |
| [3]                           | ETR warning 1      |   |
| [4]                           | ETR trip 1         |   |
| [5]                           | ETR warning 2      |   |
| [6]                           | ETR trip 2         |   |
| [7]                           | ETR warning 3      |   |
| [8]                           | ETR trip 3         |   |
| [9]                           | ETR warning 4      |   |
| [10]                          | ETR trip 4         |   |

ETR (Electronic Thermal Relay) functions 1-4 calculate the load when the set-up where they were selected is active. For example ETR-3 starts calculating when set-up 3 is selected. For the North American market: The ETR functions provide class 20 motor overload protection in accordance with NEC.



175ZA052.12

Illustration 6.9 Thermal motor protection

**WARNING**

To maintain PELV, all connections made to the control terminals must be PELV, for example, thermistor must be reinforced/double insulated

**NOTICE**

Danfoss recommends using 24 V DC as thermistor supply voltage.

**NOTICE**

The ETR timer function does not work when 1-10 Motor Construction = [1] PM, non-salient SPM.

**NOTICE**

For correct operation of the ETR function, the setting in parameter 1-03 Torque Characteristics must fit the application (see description of parameter 1-03 Torque Characteristics).

| 1-93 Thermistor Source |  |
|------------------------|--|
| Option:                | Function:  |
|                        | <p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p>This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running.</p> <p>Select the input to which the thermistor (PTC sensor) should be connected. An analog input option [1] Analog Input 53 or [2] Analog Input 54 cannot be selected if the analog input is already in use as a reference source (selected in parameter 3-15 Reference 1 Source, parameter 3-16 Reference 2 Source or 3-17 Reference 3 Source).</p> <p>When using MCB 112, [0] None must always be selected.</p> |

| 1-93 Thermistor Source |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| Option:                | Function:        |
| [0] *                  | None             |
| [1]                    | Analog Input 53  |
| [2]                    | Analog Input 54  |
| [3]                    | Digital input 18 |
| [4]                    | Digital input 19 |
| [5]                    | Digital input 32 |
| [6]                    | Digital input 33 |

**NOTICE**

Digital input should be set to [0] PNP - Active at 24 V in 5-00 Digital I/O Mode.

| 2-00 DC Hold/Preheat Current |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Range:                       | Function:   |
| 50 %* [ 0 - 160 %]           | <p>Enter a value for holding current as a percentage of the rated motor current <math>I_{M,N}</math> set in parameter 1-24 Motor Current. 100% DC hold current corresponds to <math>I_{M,N}</math>.</p> <p>This parameter holds the motor (holding torque) or pre-heats the motor.</p> <p>This parameter is active if [1] DC hold/Motor Preheat is selected in parameter 1-80 Function at Stop.</p> |

**NOTICE**

Parameter 2-00 DC Hold/Preheat Current have no effect when 1-10 Motor Construction = [1] PM, non-salient SPM.

**NOTICE**

The maximum value depends on the rated motor current. Avoid 100% current for too long. It may damage the motor.

| 2-10 Brake Function |                |   |
|---------------------|----------------|---|
| Option:             | Function:      |   |
|                     |                | Available selections depend on 1-10 Motor Construction:<br>[0] Asynchron:<br>[0] Off<br>[1] Resistor brake<br>[2] AC brake<br>[1] PM non-salient:<br>[0] Off<br>[1] Resistor brake  |
| [0]                 | Off            | No brake resistor installed.  |
| [1]                 | Resistor brake | Brake resistor incorporated in the system, for dissipation of surplus brake energy as heat. Connecting a brake resistor allows a higher DC-link voltage during braking (generating operation). The resistor brake function is only active in frequency converters with an integral dynamic brake. |
| [2]                 | AC brake       | AC Brake only works in compressor torque mode in parameter 1-03 Torque Characteristics.   |

| 2-17 Over-voltage Control |           |                  |
|---------------------------|-----------|------------------|
| Option:                   | Function: |                  |
| [0]                       | Disabled  | No OVC required. |
| [2] *                     | Enabled   | Activates OVC.   |

**NOTICE**

Parameter 2-17 Over-voltage Control has no effect when 1-10 Motor Construction = [1] PM, non-salient SPM.

**NOTICE**

The ramp time is automatically adjusted to avoid tripping of the frequency converter.

| 3-02 Minimum Reference  |           |  |
|---|-----------|--|
| Range:  | Function: |  |
| Size related*<br>[-999999.999 - par. 3-03 ReferenceFeed-backUnit] |           | Enter the minimum reference. The minimum reference is the lowest value obtainable by summing all references. The minimum reference value and unit matches the configuration made in parameter 1-00 Configuration Mode and 20-12 Reference/Feedback Unit.<br><br><b>NOTICE</b><br>This parameter is used in open loop only. |

| 3-04 Reference Function |                  |   |
|-------------------------|------------------|---|
| Option:                 | Function:        |   |
| [0]                     | Sum              | Sums both external and preset reference sources.  |
| [1]                     | External/ Preset | Use either the preset or the external reference source. Shift between external and preset via a command on a digital input. |

| 3-10 Preset Reference |           |  |
|-----------------------|-----------|--|
| Array [8]             |           |  |
| Range:                | Function: |  |
| 0 %* [-100 - 100 %]   |           | Enter up to 8 different preset references (0-7) in this parameter, using array programming. The preset reference is stated as a percentage of the value Ref <sub>MAX</sub> (3-03 Maximum Reference, for closed loop see 20-14 Maximum Reference/ Feedb.). When using preset references, select Preset ref. bit 0/1/2 [16], [17] or [18] for the corresponding digital inputs in parameter group 5-1* Digital Inputs. |

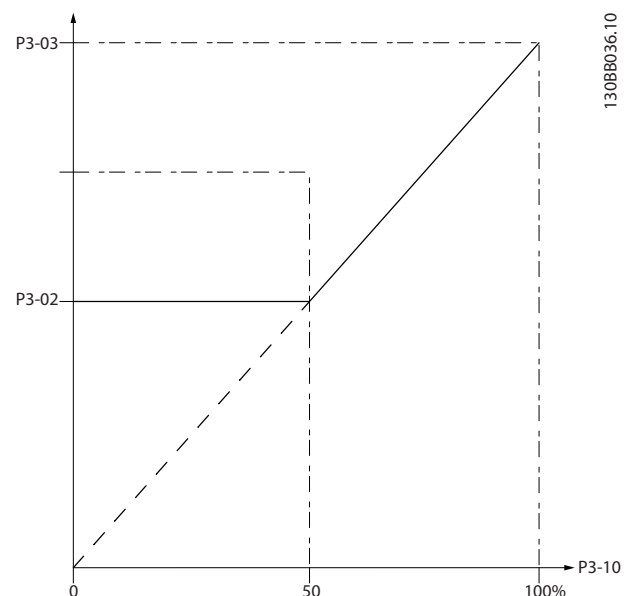


Illustration 6.10 Preset Reference

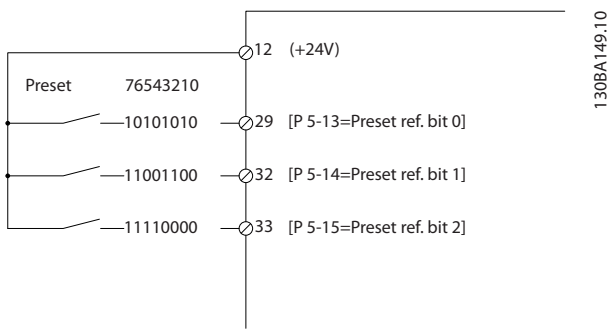


Illustration 6.11 Preset Reference Scheme

| 3-15 Reference 1 Source |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Option:                 | Function:   |
|                         | <p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p>This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running.</p> <p>Select the reference input to be used for the first reference signal.</p> <p>Parameter 3-15 Reference 1 Source, parameter 3-16 Reference 2 Source and 3-17 Reference 3 Source define up to 3 different reference signals. The sum of these reference signals defines the actual reference.</p> |
| [0]                     | No function   |
| [1] *                   | Analog Input 53   |
| [2]                     | Analog Input 54   |
| [7]                     | Pulse input 29  |
| [8]                     | Pulse input 33  |
| [20]                    | Digital pot.meter   |
| [21]                    | Analog input X30/11   |
| [22]                    | Analog input X30/12   |
| [23]                    | Analog Input X42/1  |
| [24]                    | Analog Input X42/3  |
| [25]                    | Analog Input X42/5  |
| [29]                    | Analog Input X48/2  |
| [30]                    | Ext. Closed Loop 1  |
| [31]                    | Ext. Closed Loop 2  |
| [32]                    | Ext. Closed Loop 3  |

| 3-16 Reference 2 Source |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Option:                 | Function:  |
|                         | <p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p>This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running.</p> <p>Select the reference input to be used for the second reference signal. Parameter 3-15 Reference 1</p> |

| 3-16 Reference 2 Source |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Option:                 | Function:  |
|                         | Source, parameter 3-16 Reference 2 Source and 3-17 Reference 3 Source define up to 3 different reference signals. The sum of these reference signals defines the actual reference. |
| [0]                     | No function  |
| [1]                     | Analog Input 53  |
| [2]                     | Analog Input 54  |
| [7]                     | Pulse input 29   |
| [8]                     | Pulse input 33   |
| [20] *                  | Digital pot.meter  |
| [21]                    | Analog input X30/11  |
| [22]                    | Analog input X30/12  |
| [23]                    | Analog Input X42/1   |
| [24]                    | Analog Input X42/3   |
| [25]                    | Analog Input X42/5   |
| [29]                    | Analog Input X48/2   |
| [30]                    | Ext. Closed Loop 1   |
| [31]                    | Ext. Closed Loop 2   |
| [32]                    | Ext. Closed Loop 3   |

| 4-10 Motor Speed Direction |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| Option:                    | Function:   |
|                            | Selects the motor speed direction required. Use this parameter to prevent unwanted reversing. |
| [0]                        | Clockwise<br>Only operation in clockwise direction is allowed.                                |
| [2] *                      | Both directions<br>Operation in both clockwise and counter-clockwise direction is allowed.    |

**NOTICE**

The setting in parameter 4-10 Motor Speed Direction has impact on the Flying Start in parameter 1-73 Flying Start.

| 4-53 Warning Speed High                    |   |
|--|---|
| Range:                                     | Function:   |
| Size related* [ par. 4-52 - par. 4-13 RPM] | Enter the n <sub>HIGH</sub> value. When the motor speed exceeds this limit (n <sub>HIGH</sub> ), the display reads SPEED HIGH. The signal outputs can be programmed to produce a status signal on terminal 27 or 29 and on relay output 01 or 02. Programme the upper signal limit of the motor speed, n <sub>HIGH</sub> , within the normal working range of the frequency converter. Refer to . |

**NOTICE**

Any changes in *parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]* reset the value in *parameter 4-53 Warning Speed High* to the same value as set in *parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]*.

If a different value is needed in *parameter 4-53 Warning Speed High*, it must be set after programming of *parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]*

6

| 4-56 Warning Feedback Low       |   |   |
|---------------------------------|---|---|
| Range:                          |   | Function:   |
| -999999.999<br>ProcessCtrlUnit* | [-999999.999 -<br>par. 4-57<br>ProcessCtrlUnit] | Enter the lower feedback limit. When the feedback drops below this limit, the display reads Feedb <sub>Low</sub> . The signal outputs can be programmed to produce a status signal on terminal 27 or 29 and on relay output 01 or 02. |

| 4-57 Warning Feedback High     |  |  |
|--------------------------------|--|--|
| Range:                         |  | Function:  |
| 999999.999<br>ProcessCtrlUnit* | [par. 4-56 -<br>999999.999<br>ProcessCtrlUnit] | Enter the upper feedback limit. When the feedback exceeds this limit, the display reads Feedb <sub>High</sub> . The signal outputs can be programmed to produce a status signal on terminal 27 or 29 and on relay output 01 or 02. |

| 4-64 Semi-Auto Bypass Set-up |   |  |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| Option:                      | Function:   |  |
| [0] * Off                    | No function   |  |
| [1] Enabled                  | Starts the semi-automatic bypass set-up and continues with the procedure described above. |  |

| 5-01 Terminal 27 Mode |  |  |
|-----------------------|--|--|
| Option:               | Function:                                |  |
|                       |  | <b>NOTICE</b><br>This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running. |
| [0] * Input           | Defines terminal 27 as a digital input.  |  |
| [1] Output            | Defines terminal 27 as a digital output. |  |

| 5-02 Terminal 29 Mode |  |  |
|-----------------------|--|--|
| Option:               | Function:                                |  |
|                       |  | <b>NOTICE</b><br>This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running. |
| [0] * Input           | Defines terminal 29 as a digital input.  |  |
| [1] Output            | Defines terminal 29 as a digital output. |  |

6.1.4 5-1\* Digital Inputs

Parameters for configuring the input functions for the input terminals.

The digital inputs are used for selecting various functions in the frequency converter. All digital inputs can be set to the following functions

| Digital input function  | Select | Terminal                 |
|-------------------------|--------|--------------------------|
| No operation            | [0]    | All *terminal 19, 32, 33 |
| Reset                   | [1]    | All                      |
| Coast inverse           | [2]    | 27                       |
| Coast and reset inverse | [3]    | All                      |
| DC-brake inverse        | [5]    | All                      |
| Stop inverse            | [6]    | All                      |
| External interlock      | [7]    | All                      |
| Start                   | [8]    | All *terminal 18         |
| Latched start           | [9]    | All                      |
| Reversing               | [10]   | All                      |
| Start reversing         | [11]   | All                      |
| Jog                     | [14]   | All *terminal 29         |
| Preset reference on     | [15]   | All                      |
| Preset ref bit 0        | [16]   | All                      |
| Preset ref bit 1        | [17]   | All                      |
| Preset ref bit 2        | [18]   | All                      |
| Freeze reference        | [19]   | All                      |
| Freeze output           | [20]   | All                      |
| Speed up                | [21]   | All                      |
| Speed down              | [22]   | All                      |
| Set-up select bit 0     | [23]   | All                      |
| Set-up select bit 1     | [24]   | All                      |
| Pulse input             | [32]   | terminal 29, 33          |
| Ramp bit 0              | [34]   | All                      |
| Mains failure inverse   | [36]   | All                      |
| Fire mode               | [37]   | All                      |
| Run Permissive          | [52]   | All                      |
| Hand start              | [53]   | All                      |
| Auto start              | [54]   | All                      |
| DigiPot Increase        | [55]   | All                      |
| DigiPot Decrease        | [56]   | All                      |
| DigiPot Clear           | [57]   | All                      |
| Counter A (up)          | [60]   | 29, 33                   |
| Counter A (down)        | [61]   | 29, 33                   |

| Digital input function | Select | Terminal |
|------------------------|--------|----------|
| Reset Counter A        | [62]   | All      |
| Counter B (up)         | [63]   | 29, 33   |
| Counter B (down)       | [64]   | 29, 33   |
| Reset Counter B        | [65]   | All      |
| Sleep Mode             | [66]   | All      |
| Reset Maintenance Word | [78]   | All      |
| PTC Card 1             | [80]   | All      |
| Lead Pump Start        | [120]  | All      |
| Lead Pump Alternation  | [121]  | All      |
| Pump 1 Interlock       | [130]  | All      |
| Pump 2 Interlock       | [131]  | All      |
| Pump 3 Interlock       | [132]  | All      |

**5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input**

The parameter contains all options and functions listed in parameter group 5-1\* *Digital Inputs* except for option [32] *Pulse input*.

**5-13 Terminal 29 Digital Input**

The parameter contains all options and functions listed in parameter group 5-1\* *Digital Inputs*.

**5-14 Terminal 32 Digital Input**

The parameter contains all options and functions listed in parameter group 5-1\* *Digital Inputs* except for option [32] *Pulse input*.

**5-15 Terminal 33 Digital Input**

The parameter contains all options and functions listed in parameter group 5-1\* *Digital Inputs*.

**5-40 Function Relay**

Array [8]  
 (Relay 1 [0], Relay 2 [1])  
 Option MCB 105: Relay 7 [6], Relay 8 [7] and Relay 9 [8]).  
 Select options to define the function of the relays.  
 The selection of each mechanical relay is realised in an array parameter.

| Option: | Function:            |                              |
|---------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| [0]     | No operation         |                              |
| [1]     | Control Ready        |                              |
| [2]     | Drive ready          |                              |
| [3]     | Drive rdy/rem ctrl   |                              |
| [4]     | Standby / no warning |                              |
| [5]     | Running              | Default setting for relay 2. |
| [6]     | Running / no warning |                              |
| [8]     | Run on ref/no warn   |                              |
| [9]     | Alarm                | Default setting for relay 1. |
| [10]    | Alarm or warning     |                              |
| [11]    | At torque limit      |                              |
| [12]    | Out of current range |                              |
| [13]    | Below current, low   |                              |

**5-40 Function Relay**

Array [8]  
 (Relay 1 [0], Relay 2 [1])  
 Option MCB 105: Relay 7 [6], Relay 8 [7] and Relay 9 [8]).  
 Select options to define the function of the relays.  
 The selection of each mechanical relay is realised in an array parameter.

| Option: | Function:              |
|---------|------------------------|
| [14]    | Above current, high    |
| [15]    | Out of speed range     |
| [16]    | Below speed, low       |
| [17]    | Above speed, high      |
| [18]    | Out of feedb. range    |
| [19]    | Below feedback, low    |
| [20]    | Above feedback, high   |
| [21]    | Thermal warning        |
| [25]    | Reverse                |
| [26]    | Bus OK                 |
| [27]    | Torque limit & stop    |
| [28]    | Brake, no brake war    |
| [29]    | Brake ready, no fault  |
| [30]    | Brake fault (IGBT)     |
| [33]    | Safe stop active       |
| [35]    | External Interlock     |
| [36]    | Control word bit 11    |
| [37]    | Control word bit 12    |
| [40]    | Out of ref range       |
| [41]    | Below reference, low   |
| [42]    | Above ref, high        |
| [45]    | Bus ctrl.              |
| [46]    | Bus ctrl, 1 if timeout |
| [47]    | Bus ctrl, 0 if timeout |
| [60]    | Comparator 0           |
| [61]    | Comparator 1           |
| [62]    | Comparator 2           |
| [63]    | Comparator 3           |
| [64]    | Comparator 4           |
| [65]    | Comparator 5           |
| [70]    | Logic rule 0           |
| [71]    | Logic rule 1           |
| [72]    | Logic rule 2           |
| [73]    | Logic rule 3           |
| [74]    | Logic rule 4           |
| [75]    | Logic rule 5           |
| [80]    | SL digital output A    |
| [81]    | SL digital output B    |
| [82]    | SL digital output C    |
| [83]    | SL digital output D    |
| [84]    | SL digital output E    |
| [85]    | SL digital output F    |
| [160]   | No alarm               |
| [161]   | Running reverse        |
| [165]   | Local ref active       |
| [166]   | Remote ref active      |

| 5-40 Function Relay  |                       |  |
|--|-----------------------|--|
| Array [8]<br>(Relay 1 [0], Relay 2 [1])<br>Option MCB 105: Relay 7 [6], Relay 8 [7] and Relay 9 [8]).<br>Select options to define the function of the relays.<br>The selection of each mechanical relay is realised in an array parameter. |                       |  |
| Option:  | Function:             |  |
| [167]  | Start command activ   |  |
| [168]  | Hand / Off            |  |
| [169]  | Auto mode             |  |
| [180]  | Clock Fault           |  |
| [181]  | Prev. Maintenance     |  |
| [188]  | AHF Capacitor Connect |  |
| [189]  | External Fan Control  |  |
| [190]  | No-Flow               |  |
| [191]  | Dry Pump              |  |
| [192]  | End Of Curve          |  |
| [193]  | Sleep Mode            |  |
| [194]  | Broken Belt           |  |
| [195]  | Bypass Valve Control  |  |
| [196]  | Fire Mode             |  |
| [197]  | Fire Mode was Act.    |  |
| [198]  | Drive Bypass          |  |
| [211]  | Cascade Pump 1        |  |
| [212]  | Cascade Pump 2        |  |
| [213]  | Cascade Pump 3        |  |

| 6-00 Live Zero Timeout Time |   |  |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| Range:                      | Function:   |  |
| 10 s* [1 - 99 s]            | Enter the live zero time-out time period. Live zero time-out time is active for analog inputs, that is, terminal 53 or terminal 54, used as reference or feedback sources. If the reference signal value associated with the selected current input drops below 50% of the value set in <i>parameter 6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage</i> , <i>6-12 Terminal 53 Low Current</i> , <i>parameter 6-20 Terminal 54 Low Voltage</i> or <i>6-22 Terminal 54 Low Current</i> for a time period longer than the time set in <i>parameter 6-00 Live Zero Timeout Time</i> , the function selected in <i>parameter 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function</i> is activated. |  |

| 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function |  |  |
|---------------------------------|--|--|
| Option:                         | Function:  |  |
|                                 | Select the time-out function. The function set in <i>parameter 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function</i> is activated if the input signal on terminal 53 or 54 is below 50% of the value in <i>parameter 6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage</i> , <i>6-12 Terminal 53 Low Current</i> , <i>parameter 6-20 Terminal 54 Low Voltage</i> or <i>6-22 Terminal 54 Low Current</i> for a time period |  |

| 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function |   |  |
|---------------------------------|---|--|
| Option:                         | Function:   |  |
|                                 | defined in <i>parameter 6-00 Live Zero Timeout Time</i> . If several time-outs occur simultaneously, the frequency converter prioritises the time-out functions as follows  |  |
|                                 | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><i>Parameter 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function</i></li> <li><i>8-04 Control Timeout Function</i></li> </ol>  |  |
|                                 | The output frequency of the frequency converter can be:   |  |
|                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[1] frozen at the present value</li> <li>[2] overruled to stop</li> <li>[3] overruled to jog speed</li> <li>[4] overruled to max. speed</li> <li>[5] overruled to stop with subsequent trip</li> </ul> |  |
| [0] *                           | Off   |  |
| [1]                             | Freeze output   |  |
| [2]                             | Stop  |  |
| [3]                             | Jogging   |  |
| [4]                             | Max. speed  |  |
| [5]                             | Stop and trip   |  |

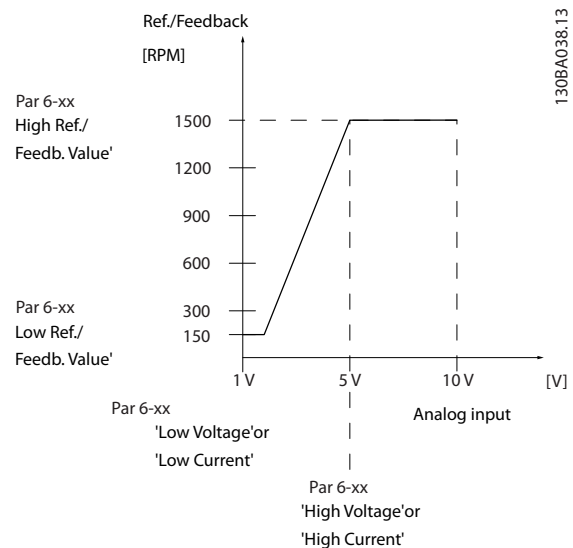


Illustration 6.12 Live Zero Conditions

| 6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage |   |  |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| Range:                       | Function:   |  |
| 0.07 V* [0 - par. 6-11 V]    | Enter the low-voltage value. This analog input scaling value should correspond to the low reference/feedback value set in <i>parameter 6-14 Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value</i> . |  |



| 6-11 Terminal 53 High Voltage |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| Range:                        | Function:  |  |
| 10 V* [ par. 6-10 - 10 V ]    | Enter the high-voltage value. This analog input scaling value should correspond to the high reference/feedback value set in <i>parameter 6-15 Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value</i> . |  |

| 6-14 Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| Range:                                 | Function:   |  |
| 0* [-999999.999 - 999999.999 ]         | Enter the analog input scaling value that corresponds to the low voltage/low current set in <i>parameter 6-10 Terminal 53 Low Voltage</i> and <i>6-12 Terminal 53 Low Current</i> . |  |

| 6-15 Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| Range:                                    | Function:   |  |
| Size related* [-999999.999 - 999999.999 ] | Enter the analog input scaling value that corresponds to the high voltage/high current value set in <i>parameter 6-11 Terminal 53 High Voltage</i> and <i>6-13 Terminal 53 High Current</i> . |  |

| 6-16 Terminal 53 Filter Time Constant |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| Range:                                | Function:  |  |
| 0.001 s* [0.001 - 10 s]               | <p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p><b>This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running.</b></p> <p>Enter the time constant. This is a first-order digital low-pass filter time constant for suppressing electrical noise in terminal 53. A high time constant value improves dampening, but also increases the time delay through the filter.</p> |  |

| 6-17 Terminal 53 Live Zero |   |  |
|----------------------------|---|--|
| Option:                    | Function:   |  |
|                            | This parameter makes it possible to disable the Live Zero monitoring. For example, to be used if the analog outputs are used as of a decentral I/O system (for example, when not as part of any frequency converter related control functions, but feeding a Building Management System with data). |  |
| [0]                        | Disabled  |  |
| [1] *                      | Enabled   |  |

| 6-20 Terminal 54 Low Voltage |   |  |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| Range:                       | Function:   |  |
| 0.07 V* [ 0 - par. 6-21 V ]  | Enter the low-voltage value. This analog input scaling value should correspond to |  |

| 6-20 Terminal 54 Low Voltage |  |  |
|------------------------------|--|--|
| Range:                       | Function:  |  |
|                              | the low reference/feedback value, set in <i>parameter 6-24 Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. Value</i> . |  |

| 6-21 Terminal 54 High Voltage |  |  |
|-------------------------------|--|--|
| Range:                        | Function:  |  |
| 10 V* [ par. 6-20 - 10 V ]    | Enter the high-voltage value. This analog input scaling value should correspond to the high reference/feedback value set in <i>parameter 6-25 Terminal 54 High Ref./Feedb. Value</i> . |  |

| 6-24 Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. Value |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| Range:                                 | Function:   |  |
| 0* [-999999.999 - 999999.999 ]         | Enter the analog input scaling value that corresponds to the low voltage/low current value set in <i>parameter 6-20 Terminal 54 Low Voltage</i> and <i>6-22 Terminal 54 Low Current</i> . |  |

| 6-25 Terminal 54 High Ref./Feedb. Value |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| Range:                                  | Function:   |  |
| 100* [-999999.999 - 999999.999 ]        | Enter the analog input scaling value that corresponds to the high voltage/high current value set in <i>parameter 6-21 Terminal 54 High Voltage</i> and <i>6-23 Terminal 54 High Current</i> . |  |

| 6-26 Terminal 54 Filter Time Constant |   |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| Range:                                | Function:   |  |
| 0.001 s* [0.001 - 10 s]               | <p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p><b>This parameter cannot be adjusted while the motor is running.</b></p> <p>Enter the time constant. This is a first-order digital low-pass filter time constant for suppressing electrical noise in terminal 54. A high time constant value improves dampening but also increases the time delay through the filter.</p> |  |

| 6-27 Terminal 54 Live Zero |   |  |
|----------------------------|---|--|
| Option:                    | Function:   |  |
|                            | This parameter makes it possible to disable the Live Zero monitoring. For example, to be used if the analog outputs are used as of a decentral I/O system (for example, when not as part of any frequency converter related control functions, but feeding a Building Management System with data). |  |
| [0]                        | Disabled  |  |
| [1] *                      | Enabled   |  |

| 6-50 Terminal 42 Output |                               |  |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| Option:                 | Function:                     |  |
|                         |                               | Select the function of Terminal 42 as an analog current output. A motor current of 20 mA corresponds to $I_{max}$ .                          |
| [0]                     | No operation                  |  |
| [100]                   | Output freq. 0-100            | 0-100 Hz, (0-20 mA)  |
| [101]                   | Reference Min-Max             | Minimum reference - Maximum reference, (0-20 mA)   |
| [102]                   | Feedback +-200%               | -200% to +200% of 20-14 <i>Maximum Reference/Feedb.</i> , (0-20 mA)  |
| [103]                   | Motor cur. 0-I <sub>max</sub> | 0 - Inverter Max. Current (16-37 <i>Inv. Max. Current</i> ), (0-20 mA)   |
| [104]                   | Torque 0-T <sub>lim</sub>     | 0 - Torque limit (4-16 <i>Torque Limit Motor Mode</i> ), (0-20 mA)   |
| [105]                   | Torque 0-T <sub>nom</sub>     | 0 - Motor rated torque, (0-20 mA)  |
| [106]                   | Power 0-P <sub>nom</sub>      | 0 - Motor rated power, (0-20 mA)   |
| [107]                   | Speed 0-HighLim               | 0 - Speed High Limit ( <i>parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]</i> and <i>parameter 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]</i> ), (0-20 mA) |
| [113]                   | Ext. Closed Loop 1            | 0-100%, (0-20 mA)  |
| [114]                   | Ext. Closed Loop 2            | 0-100%, (0-20 mA)  |
| [115]                   | Ext. Closed Loop 3            | 0-100%, (0-20 mA)  |
| [130]                   | Out frq 0-100 4-20mA          | 0-100 Hz   |
| [131]                   | Reference 4-20mA              | Minimum Reference - Maximum Reference  |
| [132]                   | Feedback 4-20mA               | -200% to +200% of 20-14 <i>Maximum Reference/Feedb.</i>  |
| [133]                   | Motor cur. 4-20mA             | 0 - Inverter Max. Current (16-37 <i>Inv. Max. Current</i> )  |
| [134]                   | Torq.0-lim 4-20 mA            | 0 - Torque limit (4-16 <i>Torque Limit Motor Mode</i> )  |
| [135]                   | Torq.0-nom 4-20mA             | 0 - Motor rated torque   |
| [136]                   | Power 4-20mA                  | 0 - Motor rated power  |
| [137]                   | Speed 4-20mA                  | 0 - Speed High Limit (4-13 and 4-14)   |
| [139]                   | Bus ctrl.                     | 0-100%, (0-20 mA)  |
| [140]                   | Bus ctrl. 4-20 mA             | 0-100%   |
| [141]                   | Bus ctrl t.o.                 | 0-100%, (0-20 mA)  |
| [142]                   | Bus ctrl t.o. 4-20mA          | 0-100%   |
| [143]                   | Ext. CL 1 4-20mA              | 0-100%   |
| [144]                   | Ext. CL 2 4-20mA              | 0-100%   |

| 6-50 Terminal 42 Output |                  |        |
|-------------------------|------------------|--------|
| Option:                 | Function:        |        |
| [145]                   | Ext. CL 3 4-20mA | 0-100% |

**NOTICE**

Values for setting the minimum reference are found in open loop *parameter 3-02 Minimum Reference* and for closed loop *20-13 Minimum Reference/Feedb.* - values for maximum reference for open loop is found in *3-03 Maximum Reference* and for closed loop *20-14 Maximum Reference/Feedb.*

| 6-51 Terminal 42 Output Min Scale |  |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| Range:                            | Function:  |  |
| 0 %* [0 - 200 %]                  | Scale for the minimum output (0 mA or 4 mA) of the analog signal at terminal 42. Set the value to be the percentage of the full range of the variable selected in <i>parameter 6-50 Terminal 42 Output</i> . |  |

| 6-52 Terminal 42 Output Max Scale  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| Range:   | Function:   |  |
| 100 %* [0 - 200 %]   | Scale for the maximum output (20 mA) of the analog signal at terminal 42. Set the value to be the percentage of the full range of the variable selected in <i>parameter 6-50 Terminal 42 Output</i> . |  |
| <p>0% Analogue output Min Scale par. 6-93</p> <p>Analygue Output Max Scale par. 6-94</p> <p>100% Variable for output example: Speed (RPM)</p>  |   |  |
| <p><b>Illustration 6.13 Output Current vs Reference Variable</b></p> <p>It is possible to get a value lower than 20 mA at full scale by programming values &gt;100% by using a formula as follows:</p> |   |  |

$$20 \text{ mA} / \text{desired maximum current} \times 100\%$$

$$i.e. 10 \text{ mA} : \frac{20 \text{ mA}}{10 \text{ mA}} \times 100\% = 200\%$$

**Example 1:**

Variable value=OUTPUT FREQUENCY, range=0-100 Hz

Range needed for output=0-50 Hz

Output signal 0 mA or 4 mA is needed at 0 Hz (0% of range) - set *parameter 6-51 Terminal 42 Output Min Scale* to 0%

Output signal 20 mA is needed at 50 Hz (50% of range) - set *parameter 6-52 Terminal 42 Output Max Scale* to 50%

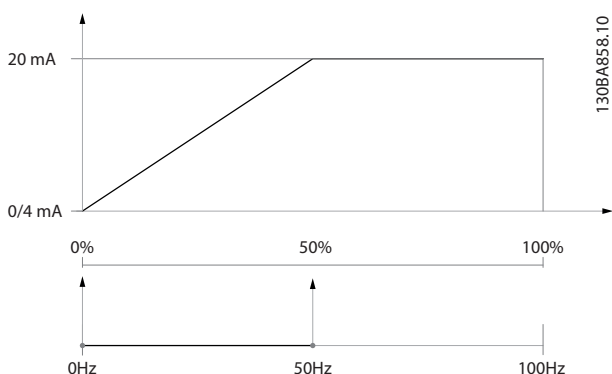


Illustration 6.14 Example 1

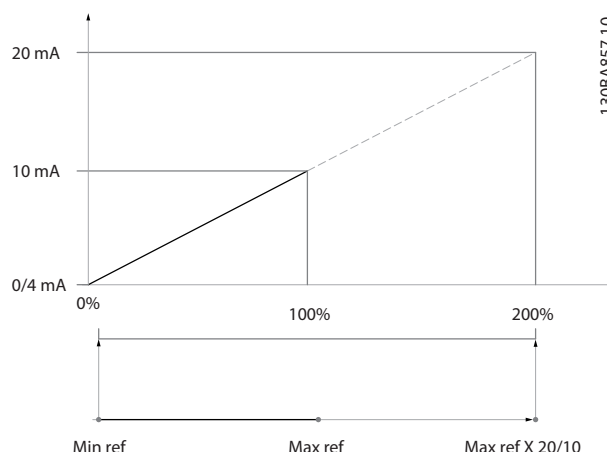


Illustration 6.16 Example 3

**Example 2:**

Variable=FEEDBACK, range=-200% to +200%

Range needed for output=0-100%

Output signal 0 mA or 4 mA is needed at 0% (50% of range) - set parameter 6-51 Terminal 42 Output Min Scale to 50%

Output signal 20 mA is needed at 100% (75% of range) - set parameter 6-52 Terminal 42 Output Max Scale to 75%

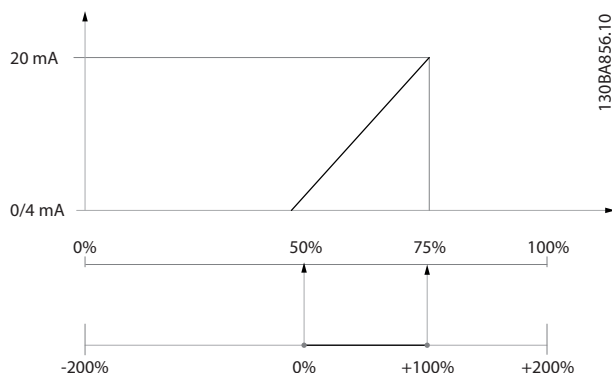


Illustration 6.15 Example 2

**Example 3:**

Variable value=REFERENCE, range=Minimum ref - maximum ref.

Range needed for output=Minimum ref (0%) - Maximum ref (100%), 0-10 mA

Output signal 0 mA or 4 mA is needed at minimum ref - set parameter 6-51 Terminal 42 Output Min Scale to 0%

Output signal 10 mA is needed at maximum ref (100% of range) - set parameter 6-52 Terminal 42 Output Max Scale to 200%

(20 mA/10 mA x 100%=200%).

**14-01 Switching Frequency**

**Option:**      **Function:**

Select the inverter switching frequency. Changing the switching frequency can help to reduce acoustic noise from the motor.

**NOTICE**

The output frequency value of the frequency converter must never exceed 1/10 of the switching frequency. When the motor is running, adjust the switching frequency in parameter 14-01 Switching Frequency until the motor is as noiseless as possible. See also 14-00 Switching Pattern and section Derating in the relevant Design Guide.

|      |          |  |
|------|----------|--|
| [0]  | 1.0 kHz  |  |
| [1]  | 1.5 kHz  |  |
| [2]  | 2.0 kHz  |  |
| [3]  | 2.5 kHz  |  |
| [4]  | 3.0 kHz  |  |
| [5]  | 3.5 kHz  |  |
| [6]  | 4.0 kHz  |  |
| [7]  | 5.0 kHz  |  |
| [8]  | 6.0 kHz  |  |
| [9]  | 7.0 kHz  |  |
| [10] | 8.0 kHz  |  |
| [11] | 10.0 kHz |  |
| [12] | 12.0kHz  |  |
| [13] | 14.0 kHz |  |
| [14] | 16.0kHz  |  |

| 20-00 Feedback 1 Source |                     |   |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Option:                 | Function:           |   |
|                         |                     | Up to 3 different feedback signals can be used to provide the feedback signal for the frequency converter's PID controller.<br>This parameter defines which input is used as the source of the first feedback signal.<br>Analog input X30/11 and analog input X30/12 refer to inputs on the optional general purpose I/O board. |
| [0]                     | No function         |   |
| [1]                     | Analog Input 53     |   |
| [2] *                   | Analog Input 54     |   |
| [3]                     | Pulse input 29      |   |
| [4]                     | Pulse input 33      |   |
| [7]                     | Analog Input X30/11 |   |
| [8]                     | Analog Input X30/12 |   |
| [9]                     | Analog Input X42/1  |   |
| [10]                    | Analog Input X42/3  |   |
| [11]                    | Analog Input X42/5  |   |
| [15]                    | Analog Input X48/2  |   |
| [100]                   | Bus Feedback 1      |   |
| [101]                   | Bus Feedback 2      |   |
| [102]                   | Bus feedback 3      |   |
| [104]                   | Sensorless Flow     | Requires set-up by MCT 10 Set-up Software with sensorless specific plug-in.   |
| [105]                   | Sensorless Pressure | Requires set-up by MCT 10 Set-up Software with sensorless specific plug-in.   |

**NOTICE**

If a feedback is not used, its source must be set to [0] No Function. Parameter 20-20 Feedback Function determines how the PID controller uses the 3 possible feedbacks.

| 20-01 Feedback 1 Conversion |                         |   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Option:                     | Function:               |   |
|                             |                         | This parameter allows a conversion function to be applied to Feedback 1.  |
| [0]                         | Linear                  | No effect on the feedback.  |
| [1]                         | Square root             | Commonly used when a pressure sensor is used to provide flow feedback (( $flow \propto \sqrt{pressure}$ )).   |
| [2]                         | Pressure to temperature | Used in compressor applications to provide temperature feedback using a pressure sensor. The temperature of the refrigerant is calculated using the following formula:<br>$Temperature = \frac{A2}{(\ln(Pe + 1) - A1)} - A3,$ |

| 20-01 Feedback 1 Conversion |                  |   |
|-----------------------------|------------------|---|
| Option:                     | Function:        |   |
|                             |                  | where A1, A2 and A3 are refrigerant-specific constants. The refrigerant must be selected in 20-30 Refrigerant. Parameter 20-21 Setpoint 1 through 20-23 Setpoint 3 allow the values of A1, A2 and A3 to be entered for a refrigerant that is not listed in 20-30 Refrigerant.   |
| [3]                         | Pressure to flow | Used in applications where for controlling the air flow in a duct. A dynamic pressure measurement (pitot tube) represents the feedback signal.<br>$Flow = Duct\ Area \times \sqrt{Dynamic\ Pressure} \times Air\ Density\ Factor$<br>See also 20-34 Duct 1 Area [m2] through 20-38 Air Density Factor [%] for setting of duct area and air density. |
| [4]                         | Velocity to flow | Used in applications where for controlling the air flow in a duct. An air velocity measurement represents the feedback signal.<br>$Flow = Duct\ Area \times Air\ Velocity$<br>See also 20-34 Duct 1 Area [m2] through 20-37 Duct 2 Area [in2] for setting of duct area.   |

| 20-03 Feedback 2 Source |                     |  |
|-------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Option:                 | Function:           |  |
|                         |                     | See parameter 20-00 Feedback 1 Source for details. |
| [0] *                   | No function         |  |
| [1]                     | Analog Input 53     |  |
| [2]                     | Analog Input 54     |  |
| [3]                     | Pulse input 29      |  |
| [4]                     | Pulse input 33      |  |
| [7]                     | Analog Input X30/11 |  |
| [8]                     | Analog Input X30/12 |  |
| [9]                     | Analog Input X42/1  |  |
| [10]                    | Analog Input X42/3  |  |
| [11]                    | Analog Input X42/5  |  |
| [15]                    | Analog Input X48/2  |  |
| [100]                   | Bus Feedback 1      |  |
| [101]                   | Bus Feedback 2      |  |
| [102]                   | Bus feedback 3      |  |
| [104]                   | Sensorless Flow     |  |
| [105]                   | Sensorless Pressure |  |

| 20-04 Feedback 2 Conversion |                         |   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Option:                     | Function:               |   |
|                             |                         | See <i>parameter 20-01 Feedback 1 Conversion</i> for details. |
| [0] *                       | Linear                  |   |
| [1]                         | Square root             |   |
| [2]                         | Pressure to temperature |   |
| [3]                         | Pressure to flow        |   |
| [4]                         | Velocity to flow        |   |

| 20-06 Feedback 3 Source |                     |   |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Option:                 | Function:           |   |
|                         |                     | See <i>parameter 20-00 Feedback 1 Source</i> for details. |
| [0] *                   | No function         |   |
| [1]                     | Analog Input 53     |   |
| [2]                     | Analog Input 54     |   |
| [3]                     | Pulse input 29      |   |
| [4]                     | Pulse input 33      |   |
| [7]                     | Analog Input X30/11 |   |
| [8]                     | Analog Input X30/12 |   |
| [9]                     | Analog Input X42/1  |   |
| [10]                    | Analog Input X42/3  |   |
| [11]                    | Analog Input X42/5  |   |
| [15]                    | Analog Input X48/2  |   |
| [100]                   | Bus Feedback 1      |   |
| [101]                   | Bus Feedback 2      |   |
| [102]                   | Bus feedback 3      |   |
| [104]                   | Sensorless Flow     |   |
| [105]                   | Sensorless Pressure |   |

| 20-07 Feedback 3 Conversion |                         |   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| Option:                     | Function:               |   |
|                             |                         | See <i>parameter 20-01 Feedback 1 Conversion</i> for details. |
| [0] *                       | Linear                  |   |
| [1]                         | Square root             |   |
| [2]                         | Pressure to temperature |   |
| [3]                         | Pressure to flow        |   |
| [4]                         | Velocity to flow        |   |

| 20-20 Feedback Function |           |   |
|-------------------------|-----------|---|
| Option:                 | Function: |   |
|                         |           | This parameter determines how the 3 possible feedbacks are used to control the output frequency of the frequency converter. |
| [0]                     | Sum       | Sets up the PID Controller to use the sum of Feedback 1, Feedback 2 and Feedback 3 as the feedback.                         |

| 20-20 Feedback Function |            |   |
|-------------------------|------------|---|
| Option:                 | Function:  |   |
|                         |            | <p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p>Any unused feedbacks must be set to <i>No Function</i> in <i>parameter 20-00 Feedback 1 Source</i>, <i>parameter 20-03 Feedback 2 Source</i>, or <i>parameter 20-06 Feedback 3 Source</i>.</p> <p>The sum of setpoint 1 and any other references that are enabled (see <i>parameter group 3-1* References</i>) are used as the PID Controller's setpoint reference.</p>   |
| [1]                     | Difference | <p>Sets up the PID controller to use the difference between Feedback 1 and Feedback 2 as the feedback. Feedback 3 is not used with this selection. Only Setpoint 1 is used. The sum of Setpoint 1 and any other references that are enabled (see <i>parameter group 3-1* References</i>) are used as the PID controller's setpoint reference.</p>   |
| [2]                     | Average    | <p>Sets up the PID Controller to use the average of Feedback 1, Feedback 2 and Feedback 3 as the feedback.</p> <p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p>Any unused feedbacks must be set to <i>No Function</i> in <i>parameter 20-00 Feedback 1 Source</i>, <i>parameter 20-03 Feedback 2 Source</i>, or <i>parameter 20-06 Feedback 3 Source</i>. The sum of Setpoint 1 and any other references that are enabled (see <i>parameter group 3-1* References</i>) are used as the PID Controller's setpoint reference.</p>   |
| [3] *                   | Minimum    | <p>Sets up the PID Controller to compare feedback 1, feedback 2 and feedback 3 and uses the lowest value as the feedback.</p> <p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p>Any unused feedbacks must be set to <i>No Function</i> in <i>parameter 20-00 Feedback 1 Source</i>, <i>parameter 20-03 Feedback 2 Source</i>, or <i>parameter 20-06 Feedback 3 Source</i>. Only setpoint 1 is used. The sum of setpoint 1 and any other references that are enabled (see <i>parameter group 3-1* References</i>) are used as the PID Controller's setpoint reference.</p> |
| [4]                     | Maximum    | <p>Sets up the PID Controller to compare feedback 1, feedback 2 and feedback 3 and use the highest value as the feedback.</p>   |

| 20-20 Feedback Function |                    |   |
|-------------------------|--------------------|---|
| Option:                 | Function:          |   |
|                         |                    | <p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p>Any unused feedbacks must be set to <i>No Function</i> in <i>parameter 20-00 Feedback 1 Source</i>, <i>parameter 20-03 Feedback 2 Source</i>, or <i>parameter 20-06 Feedback 3 Source</i>.</p> <p>Only setpoint 1 is used. The sum of setpoint 1 and any other references that are enabled (see <i>parameter group 3-1* References</i>) are used as the PID Controller's setpoint reference.</p>  |
| [5]                     | Multi Setpoint Min | <p>Sets up the PID Controller to calculate the difference between feedback 1 and setpoint 1, feedback 2 and setpoint 2, and feedback 3 and setpoint 3. It uses the feedback/setpoint pair in which the feedback is the farthest below its corresponding setpoint reference. If all feedback signals are above their corresponding setpoints, the PID Controller uses the feedback/setpoint pair with the least difference between the 2.</p> <p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p>If only 2 feedback signals are used, set the non-used feedback to <i>[0] No Function</i> in <i>parameter 20-00 Feedback 1 Source</i>, <i>parameter 20-03 Feedback 2 Source</i>, or <i>parameter 20-06 Feedback 3 Source</i>. Note that each setpoint reference is the sum of its respective parameter value (<i>parameter 20-21 Setpoint 1</i>, <i>parameter 20-22 Setpoint 2</i> and <i>20-23 Setpoint 3</i>) and any other references that are enabled (see <i>parameter group 3-1* References</i>).</p> |
| [6]                     | Multi Setpoint Max | <p>Sets up the PID Controller to calculate the difference between feedback 1 and setpoint 1, feedback 2 and setpoint 2, and feedback 3 and setpoint 3. It uses the feedback/setpoint pair in which the feedback is farthest above its corresponding setpoint reference. If all feedback signals are below their corresponding setpoints, the PID Controller uses the feedback/setpoint pair with the least difference between the 2.</p>  |

| 20-20 Feedback Function |           |  |
|-------------------------|-----------|--|
| Option:                 | Function: |  |
|                         |           | <p><b>NOTICE</b></p> <p>If only 2 feedback signals are used, set the non-used feedback to <i>[0] No Function</i> in <i>parameter 20-00 Feedback 1 Source</i>, <i>parameter 20-03 Feedback 2 Source</i>, or <i>parameter 20-06 Feedback 3 Source</i>. Note that each setpoint reference is the sum of its respective parameter value (<i>parameter 20-21 Setpoint 1</i>, <i>parameter 20-22 Setpoint 2</i> and <i>20-23 Setpoint 3</i>) and any other references that are enabled (see <i>parameter group 3-1* References</i>).</p> |

**NOTICE**

Any unused feedback must be set to *[0] No function* in its Feedback Source parameter:  
*Parameter 20-00 Feedback 1 Source*,  
*parameter 20-03 Feedback 2 Source*, or  
*parameter 20-06 Feedback 3 Source*.

The PID controller uses the feedback resulting from the function selected in *parameter 20-20 Feedback Function* to control the output frequency of the frequency converter. This feedback can also

- be shown on the frequency converter's display
- be used to control a frequency converter's analog output
- be transmitted over various serial communication protocols

The frequency converter can be configured to handle multi-zone applications. 2 different multi-zone applications are supported:

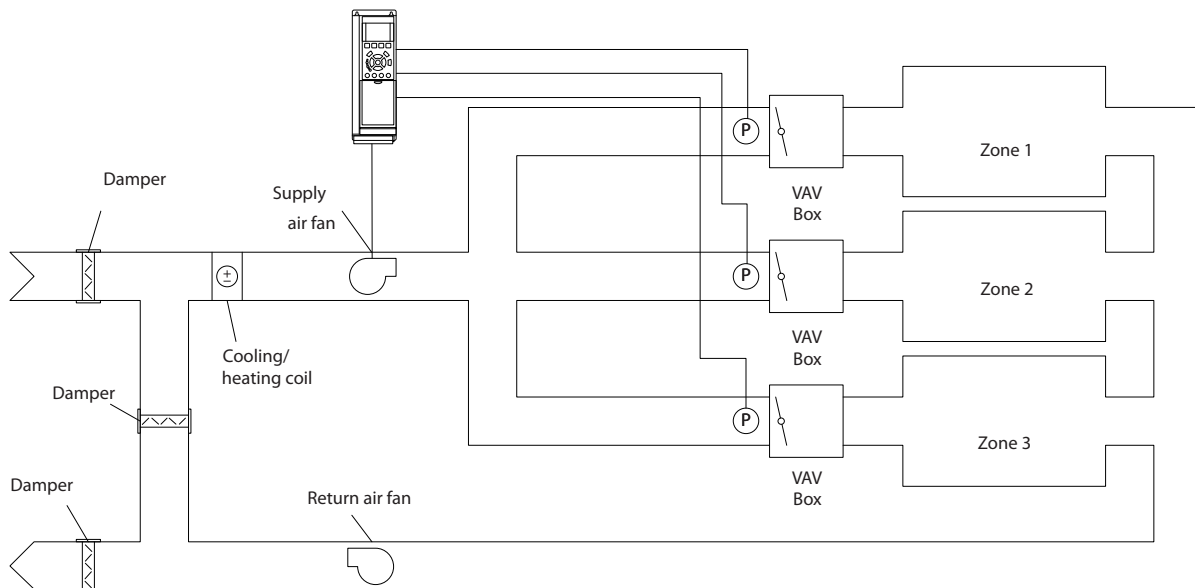
- Multi-zone, single setpoint
- Multi-zone, multi-setpoint

Examples 1 and 2 illustrate the difference between the 2:

**Example 1 – Multi-zone, single setpoint**

In an office building, a VAV (variable air volume) VLT<sup>®</sup> HVAC Drive system must ensure a minimum pressure at selected VAV boxes. Due to the varying pressure losses in each duct, the pressure at each VAV box cannot be assumed to be the same. The minimum pressure required is the same for all VAV boxes. This control method can be set up by setting *parameter 20-20 Feedback Function* to option [3], Minimum, and entering the desired pressure in *parameter 20-21 Setpoint 1*. If any feedback is below the setpoint, the PID Controller increases the fan speed. If all

feedbacks are above the setpoint, the PID controller decreases the fan speed.



130BA353.10

Illustration 6.17

**Example 2 – Multi-zone, multi-setpoint**

The previous example illustrates the use of multi-zone, multi-setpoint control. If the zones require different pressures for each VAV box, each setpoint may be specified in *parameter 20-21 Setpoint 1*, *parameter 20-22 Setpoint 2* and *20-23 Setpoint 3*. By selecting [5] *Multi-setpoint minimum* in *parameter 20-20 Feedback Function*, the PID Controller increases the fan speed if any one of the feedbacks is below its setpoint. If all feedbacks are above their individual setpoints, the PID controller decreases the fan speed.

| 20-21 Setpoint 1      |   |   |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| Range:                | Function:                                     |   |
| 0<br>ProcessCtrlUnit* | [-999999.999 - 999999.999<br>ProcessCtrlUnit] | Setpoint 1 is used in closed loop mode to enter a setpoint reference that is used by the frequency converter's PID controller. See the description of <i>parameter 20-20 Feedback Function</i> .<br><br><b>NOTICE</b><br>The setpoint reference entered here is added to any other references that are enabled (see <i>parameter group 3-1* References</i> ). |

| 20-22 Setpoint 2      |   |  |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| Range:                | Function:                                     |  |
| 0<br>ProcessCtrlUnit* | [-999999.999 - 999999.999<br>ProcessCtrlUnit] | Setpoint 2 is used in closed loop mode to enter a setpoint reference that may be used by the frequency converter's PID controller. See the description of <i>Feedback Function</i> , <i>parameter 20-20 Feedback Function</i> .<br><br><b>NOTICE</b><br>The setpoint reference entered here is added to any other references that are enabled (see <i>parameter group 3-1* References</i> ). |

| 20-81 PID Normal/ Inverse Control |           |   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|---|
| Option:                           | Function: |   |
| [0] *                             | Normal    | The frequency converter's output frequency decreases when the feedback is greater than the setpoint reference. This behaviour is common for pressure-controlled supply fan and pump applications. |
| [1]                               | Inverse   | The frequency converter's output frequency increases when the feedback is greater than the setpoint reference. This behaviour is common for   |

| 20-81 PID Normal/ Inverse Control |           |  |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|--|
| Option:                           | Function: |  |
|                                   |           | temperature-controlled cooling applications, such as cooling towers. |

| 20-93 PID Proportional Gain |           |   |
|-----------------------------|-----------|---|
| Range:                      | Function: |   |
| 0.50* [0 - 10 ]             |           | The proportional gain indicates the number of times the error between the set point and the feedback signal is to be applied. |

If (Error x Gain) jumps with a value equal to what is set in 20-14 Maximum Reference/Feedb., the PID controller tries to change the output speed equal to what is set in parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]/ parameter 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]. However, the output speed is limited by this setting.

The proportional band (error causing output to change from 0-100%) can be calculated with the formula

$$\left( \frac{1}{\text{Proportional Gain}} \right) \times (\text{Max Reference})$$

**NOTICE**

Always set the desired value for 20-14 Maximum Reference/Feedb. before setting the values for the PID controller in parameter group 20-9\* PID Controller.

| 20-94 PID Integral Time |           |   |
|-------------------------|-----------|---|
| Range:                  | Function: |   |
| 20 s* [0.01 - 10000 s]  |           | The integrator accumulates a contribution to the output from the PID controller as long as there is a deviation between the reference/ setpoint and feedback signals. The contribution is proportional to the size of the deviation. This ensures that the deviation (error) approaches zero.<br>Quick response on any deviation is obtained when the integral time is set to a low value. Setting it too low, however, may cause the control to become unstable.<br>The value set is the time needed for the integrator to add the same contribution as the proportional for a certain deviation.<br>If the value is set to 10,000, the controller acts as a pure proportional controller with a P-band based on the value set in parameter 20-93 PID Proportional Gain. When no deviation is present, the output from the proportional controller is 0. |

| 22-21 Low Power Detection |           |  |
|---------------------------|-----------|--|
| Option:                   | Function: |  |
| [0] * Disabled            |           |  |
| [1] Enabled               |           | The low-power detection commissioning must be carried out to set the parameters in parameter |

| 22-21 Low Power Detection |           |  |
|---------------------------|-----------|--|
| Option:                   | Function: |  |
|                           |           | group 22-3* No-Flow Power Tuning for proper operation. |

| 22-22 Low Speed Detection |           |   |
|---------------------------|-----------|---|
| Option:                   | Function: |   |
| [0] * Disabled            |           |   |
| [1] Enabled               |           | Detects when the motor operates with a speed as set in parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM] or parameter 4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]. |

| 22-23 No-Flow Function   |           |   |
|--|-----------|---|
| Common actions for low-power detection and low-speed detection (Individual selections not possible). |           |   |
| Option:  | Function: |   |
| [0] * Off  |           |   |
| [1] Sleep Mode   |           | The frequency converter enters sleep mode and stops when a no-flow condition is detected. See parameter group 22-4* Sleep Mode for programming options for sleep mode.                      |
| [2] Warning  |           | The frequency converter continues to run, but activates a no-flow warning [W92]. A digital output or a serial communication bus can communicate a warning to other equipment.               |
| [3] Alarm  |           | The frequency converter stops running and activates a no-flow alarm [A 92]. A frequency converter digital output or a serial communication bus can communicate an alarm to other equipment. |

**NOTICE**

Do not set 14-20 Reset Mode, to [13] Infinite auto reset, when parameter 22-23 No-Flow Function is set to [3] Alarm. Doing so, causes the frequency converter to continuously cycle between running and stopping when a no-flow condition is detected.

**NOTICE**

Disable the bypass's automatic bypass function

- if the frequency converter is equipped with a constant speed bypass with an automatic bypass function starting the bypass if the frequency converter experiences a persistent alarm condition, and
- if [3] Alarm is selected as the no-flow function.



| 22-24 No-Flow Delay |             |   |
|---------------------|-------------|---|
| Range:              |             | Function:   |
| 10 s*               | [1 - 600 s] | Set the time that low power/low speed must stay detected to activate signal for actions. If detection disappears before the timer runs out, the timer is reset. |

| 22-26 Dry Pump Function                       |                  |  |
|---|------------------|--|
| Select desired action for dry pump operation. |                  |  |
| Option:                                       |                  | Function:  |
| [0] *   | Off              |  |
| [1]   | Warning          | The frequency converter continues to run, but activates a dry pump warning [W93]. A frequency converter digital output or a serial communication bus can communicate a warning to other equipment. |
| [2]   | Alarm            | The frequency converter stops running and activates a dry pump alarm [A93]. A frequency converter digital output or a serial communication bus can communicate an alarm to other equipment.        |
| [3]   | Man. Reset Alarm | The frequency converter stops running and activates a dry pump alarm [A93]. A frequency converter digital output or a serial communication bus can communicate an alarm to other equipment.        |

**NOTICE**

Low Power Detection must be enabled (parameter 22-21 Low Power Detection) and commissioned (using either parameter group 22-3\* No-flow Power Tuning No Flow Power Tuning, or 22-20 Low Power Auto Set-up) to use dry-pump detection.

**NOTICE**

Do not set 14-20 Reset Mode, to [13] Infinite auto reset, when parameter 22-26 Dry Pump Function is set to [2] Alarm. Doing so causes the frequency converter to continuously cycle between running and stopping when a dry pump condition is detected.

**NOTICE**

If the frequency converter is equipped with a constant speed bypass with an automatic bypass function that starts the bypass if the frequency converter experiences a persistent alarm condition, be sure to disable the bypass's automatic bypass function, if [2] Alarm or [3] Man. Reset Alarm is selected as the dry-pump function.

| 22-40 Minimum Run Time |             |   |
|------------------------|-------------|---|
| Range:                 |             | Function:   |
| 10 s*                  | [0 - 600 s] | Set the desired minimum running time for the motor after a start command (digital input or bus) before entering sleep mode. |

| 22-41 Minimum Sleep Time |             |  |
|--------------------------|-------------|--|
| Range:                   |             | Function:  |
| 10 s*                    | [0 - 600 s] | Set the desired minimum time for staying in sleep mode. This setting overrides any wake-up conditions. |

| 22-42 Wake-up Speed [RPM] |                              |   |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| Range:                    |                              | Function:   |
| Size related*             | [ par. 4-11 - par. 4-13 RPM] | To be used if 0-02 Motor Speed Unit has been set for RPM (parameter not visible if Hz selected). Only to be used if parameter 1-00 Configuration Mode is set for open loop and an external controller applies speed reference. Set the reference speed at which the sleep mode should be cancelled. |

| 22-60 Broken Belt Function  |         |   |
|---|---------|---|
| Selects the action to be performed if the broken belt condition is detected |         |   |
| Option:   |         | Function:   |
| [0] *   | Off     |   |
| [1]   | Warning | The frequency converter continues to run, but activates a broken belt warning [W95]. A frequency converter digital output or a serial communication bus can communicate a warning to other equipment. |
| [2]   | Trip    | The frequency converter stops running and activates a broken belt alarm [A 95]. A frequency converter digital output or a serial communication bus can communicate an alarm to other equipment.       |

**NOTICE**

Do not set 14-20 Reset Mode, to [13] Infinite auto reset, when parameter 22-60 Broken Belt Function is set to [2] Trip. Doing so causes the frequency converter to continuously cycle between running and stopping when a broken belt condition is detected.

**NOTICE**

If the frequency converter is equipped with a constant speed bypass with an automatic bypass function that starts the bypass if the frequency converter experiences a persistent alarm condition, be sure to disable the bypass's automatic bypass function, if [2] Trip is selected as the broken belt function.

| 22-61 Broken Belt Torque |             |  |
|--------------------------|-------------|--|
| Range:                   | Function:   |  |
| 10 %*                    | [0 - 100 %] | Sets the broken belt torque as a percentage of the rated motor torque. |

| 22-62 Broken Belt Delay |             |  |
|-------------------------|-------------|--|
| Range:                  | Function:   |  |
| 10 s                    | [0 - 600 s] | Sets the time for which the broken belt conditions must be active before carrying out the action selected in <i>parameter 22-60 Broken Belt Function</i> . |

| 22-75 Short Cycle Protection |           |  |
|------------------------------|-----------|--|
| Option:                      | Function: |  |
| [0] *                        | Disabled  | Timer set in <i>parameter 22-76 Interval between Starts</i> is disabled. |
| [1]                          | Enabled   | Timer set in <i>parameter 22-76 Interval between Starts</i> is enabled.  |

| 22-76 Interval between Starts |                        |   |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|---|
| Range:                        | Function:              |   |
| Size related*                 | [ par. 22-77 - 3600 s] | Sets the time desired as minimum time between 2 starts. Any normal start command (Start/Jog/Freeze) is disregarded until the timer has expired. |

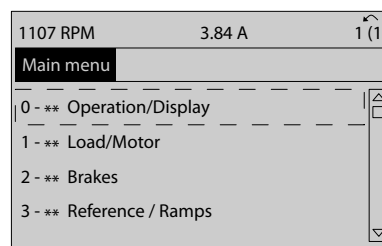
| 22-77 Minimum Run Time |                    |   |
|------------------------|--------------------|---|
| Range:                 | Function:          |   |
| 0 s*                   | [0 - par. 22-76 s] | Sets the time desired as minimum run time after a normal start command (start/jog/freeze). Any normal stop command is disregarded until the set time has expired. The timer starts counting following a normal start command (start/jog/freeze).<br><br>A coast (inverse) or an external interlock command overrides the timer. |

**NOTICE**

Does not work in cascade mode.

6.1.5 Main Menu Mode

Both the GLCP and NLCP provide access to the main menu mode. Select the Main Menu mode by pressing [Main Menu]. *Illustration 6.18* shows the resulting readout, which appears on the display of the GLCP. Lines 2 to 5 on the display show a list of parameter groups which can be selected by toggling [▲] and [▼].



130BP066.10

Illustration 6.18 Display Example

Each parameter has a name and number which remain the same regardless of the programming mode. In the Main Menu mode, the parameters are divided into groups. The first digit of the parameter number (from the left) indicates the parameter group number.

All parameters can be changed in the Main Menu. The configuration of the unit (*parameter 1-00 Configuration Mode*) determines other parameters available for programming. For example, selecting closed loop enables more parameters related to closed loop operation. Option cards added to the unit enable more parameters associated with the option device.

6.1.6 Parameter Selection

In the Main Menu mode, the parameters are divided into groups. Press the navigation keys to select a parameter group.

The following parameter groups are accessible:

| Group no. | Parameter group           |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| 0-**      | Operation/Display         |
| 1-**      | Load/Motor                |
| 2-**      | Brakes                    |
| 3-**      | References/Ramps          |
| 4-**      | Limits/Warnings           |
| 5-**      | Digital In/Out            |
| 6-**      | Analog In/Out             |
| 8-**      | Comm. and Options         |
| 9-**      | Profibus                  |
| 10-**     | CAN Fieldbus              |
| 11-**     | LonWorks                  |
| 13-**     | Smart Logic               |
| 14-**     | Special Functions         |
| 15-**     | FC Information            |
| 16-**     | Data Readouts             |
| 18-**     | Data Readouts 2           |
| 20-**     | FC Closed Loop            |
| 21-**     | Ext. Closed Loop          |
| 22-**     | Application Functions     |
| 23-**     | Time Actions              |
| 25-**     | Cascade Controller        |
| 26-**     | Analog I/O Option MCB 109 |

| Group no. | Parameter group             |
|-----------|-----------------------------|
| 27-**     | Cascade CTL Option          |
| 29-**     | Water Application Functions |
| 31-**     | Bypass Option               |

Table 6.7 Parameter Groups

After selecting a parameter group, select a parameter with the navigation keys.

The middle section on the GLCP display shows the parameter number and name as well as the selected parameter value.

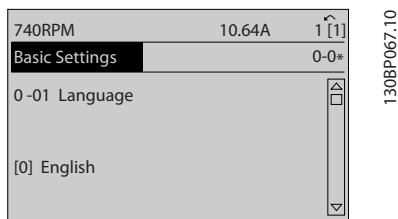


Illustration 6.19 Display Example

### 6.1.7 Changing Data

1. Press [Quick Menu] or [Main Menu] key.
2. Press [▲] and [▼] to find parameter group to edit.
3. Press [OK] key.
4. Press [▲] and [▼] to find parameter to edit.
5. Press [OK] key.
6. Press [▲] and [▼] to select correct parameter setting. Or, to move to digits within a number, press keys. Cursor indicates digit selected to change. [▲] increases the value, [▼] decreases the value.
7. Press [Cancel] to disregard change, or press [OK] to accept change and enter new setting.

### 6.1.8 Changing a Text Value

If the selected parameter is a text value, change the text value with the [▲]/[▼] keys.

[▲] increases the value, and [▼] decreases the value. Place the cursor on the value to be saved and press [OK].

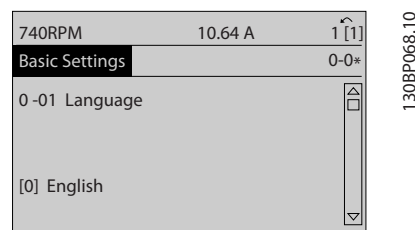


Illustration 6.20 Display Example

### 6.1.9 Changing a Group of Numeric Data Values

If the selected parameter represents a numeric data value, change the selected data value with the [◀] and [▶] keys as well as the up/down [▲] [▼] keys. Press [◀] and [▶] to move the cursor horizontally.

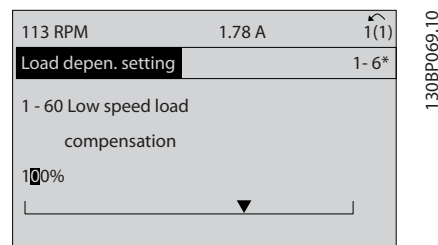


Illustration 6.21 Display Example

Press [▲] and [▼] to change the data value. [▲] increases the data value, and [▼] decreases the data value. Place the cursor on the value to be saved and press [OK].

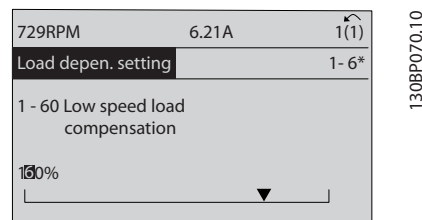


Illustration 6.22 Display Example

### 6.1.10 Changing of Data Value, Step-by-Step

Certain parameters can be changed step by step or infinitely variably. This applies to *parameter 1-20 Motor Power [kW]*, *parameter 1-22 Motor Voltage* and *parameter 1-23 Motor Frequency*.

The parameters are changed both as a group of numeric data values and as numeric data values infinitely variably.

### 6.1.11 Readout and Programming of Indexed Parameters

Parameters are indexed when placed in a rolling stack. *15-30 Alarm Log: Error Code* to *15-32 Alarm Log: Time* contain a fault log which can be read out. Select a parameter, press [OK], and use [▲] and [▼] to scroll through the value log.

Use *parameter 3-10 Preset Reference* as another example: Select the parameter, press [OK], and use [▲] and [▼] to scroll through the indexed values. To change the parameter value, select the indexed value and press [OK]. Change the value by [▲] and [▼]. Press [OK] to accept the new setting. Press [Cancel] to abort. Press [Back] to leave the parameter.

6

## 6.2 Parameter Menu Structure

|      |                                      |      |                                      |            |                              |      |                                      |             |                                      |
|------|--------------------------------------|------|--------------------------------------|------------|------------------------------|------|--------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| 0-0* | <b>Operation / Display</b>           | 1-03 | Torque Characteristics               | 1-93       | Thermistor Source            | 4-19 | Max Output Frequency                 | 5-68        | Pulse Output Max Freq #X30/6         |
| 0-0* | <b>Basic Settings</b>                | 1-06 | Clockwise Direction                  | <b>2-*</b> | <b>Brakes</b>                | 4-5* | <b>Adj. Warnings</b>                 | <b>5-8*</b> | <b>I/O Options</b>                   |
| 0-01 | Language                             | 1-1* | Motor Selection                      | 2-0*       | DC-Brake                     | 4-50 | Warning Current Low                  | 5-80        | AHF Cap Reconnect Delay              |
| 0-02 | Motor Speed Unit                     | 1-10 | Motor Construction                   | 2-00       | DC Hold/Preheat Current      | 4-51 | Warning Current High                 | 5-9*        | <b>Bus Controlled</b>                |
| 0-03 | Regional Settings                    | 1-1* | WVC+ PM                              | 2-01       | DC Brake Current             | 4-51 | Warning Speed Low                    | 5-90        | Digital & Relay Bus Control          |
| 0-04 | Operating State at Power-up          | 1-14 | Damping Gain                         | 2-02       | DC Braking Time              | 4-53 | Warning Speed High                   | 5-93        | Pulse Out #27 Bus Control            |
| 0-05 | Local Mode Unit                      | 1-15 | Low Speed Filter Time Const.         | 2-03       | DC Brake Cut In Speed [RPM]  | 4-54 | Warning Reference Low                | 5-94        | Pulse Out #27 Timeout Preset         |
| 0-1* | <b>Set-up Operations</b>             | 1-16 | High Speed Filter Time Const.        | 2-04       | DC Brake Cut In Speed [Hz]   | 4-55 | Warning Reference High               | 5-95        | Pulse Out #29 Bus Control            |
| 0-10 | Active Set-up                        | 1-17 | Voltage filter time const.           | 2-06       | Parking Current              | 4-56 | Warning Feedback Low                 | 5-96        | Pulse Out #29 Timeout Preset         |
| 0-11 | Programming Set-up                   | 1-2* | <b>Motor Data</b>                    | 2-07       | Parking Time                 | 4-57 | Warning Feedback High                | 5-97        | Pulse Out #X30/6 Bus Control         |
| 0-12 | This Set-up Linked to                | 1-20 | Motor Power [kW]                     | 2-1*       | <b>Brake Energy Funct.</b>   | 4-58 | Missing Motor Phase Function         | 5-98        | Pulse Out #X30/6 Timeout Preset      |
| 0-13 | Readout: Linked Set-ups              | 1-21 | Motor Power [HP]                     | 2-10       | Brake Function               | 4-6* | <b>Speed Bypass</b>                  | <b>6-*</b>  | <b>Analog In/Out</b>                 |
| 0-14 | Readout: Prog. Set-ups / Channel     | 1-22 | Motor Voltage                        | 2-11       | Brake Resistor (ohm)         | 4-60 | Bypass Speed From [RPM]              | 6-0*        | <b>Analog I/O Mode</b>               |
| 0-2* | <b>LCP Display</b>                   | 1-23 | Motor Frequency                      | 2-12       | Brake Power Limit (kW)       | 4-61 | Bypass Speed From [Hz]               | 6-00        | Live Zero Timeout Time               |
| 0-20 | Display Line 1.1 Small               | 1-24 | Motor Current                        | 2-13       | Brake Power Monitoring       | 4-62 | Bypass Speed To [RPM]                | 6-01        | Live Zero Timeout Function           |
| 0-21 | Display Line 1.2 Small               | 1-25 | Motor Nominal Speed                  | 2-15       | Brake Check                  | 4-63 | Bypass Speed To [Hz]                 | 6-02        | Fire Mode Live Zero Timeout Function |
| 0-22 | Display Line 1.3 Small               | 1-26 | Motor Cont. Rated Torque             | 2-16       | AC brake Max. Current        | 4-64 | Semi-Auto Bypass Set-up              | 6-1*        | <b>Analog Input 53</b>               |
| 0-23 | Display Line 2 Large                 | 1-28 | Motor Rotation Check                 | 2-17       | Over-voltage Control         | 5-*  | <b>Digital In/Out</b>                | 6-10        | Terminal 53 Low Voltage              |
| 0-24 | Display Line 3 Large                 | 1-29 | Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)     | <b>3-*</b> | <b>Reference / Ramps</b>     | 5-0* | <b>Digital I/O mode</b>              | 6-11        | Terminal 53 High Voltage             |
| 0-25 | My Personal Menu                     | 1-3* | <b>Adv. Motor Data</b>               | 3-0*       | <b>Reference Limits</b>      | 5-00 | Digital I/O Mode                     | 6-12        | Terminal 53 Low Current              |
| 0-3* | <b>LCP Custom Readout</b>            | 1-30 | Stator Resistance (Rs)               | 3-02       | Minimum Reference            | 5-01 | Terminal 27 Mode                     | 6-13        | Terminal 53 High Current             |
| 0-30 | Custom Readout Unit                  | 1-31 | Rotor Resistance (Rr)                | 3-03       | Maximum Reference            | 5-02 | Terminal 29 Mode                     | 6-14        | Terminal 53 Low Ref./Feedb. Value    |
| 0-31 | Custom Readout Min Value             | 1-35 | Main Reactance (Xh)                  | 3-04       | Reference Function           | 5-1* | <b>Digital Inputs</b>                | 6-15        | Terminal 53 High Ref./Feedb. Value   |
| 0-32 | Custom Readout Max Value             | 1-36 | Iron Loss Resistance (Rfe)           | 3-1*       | <b>References</b>            | 5-10 | Terminal 18 Digital Input            | 6-16        | Terminal 53 Filter Time Constant     |
| 0-37 | Display Text 1                       | 1-37 | d-axis Inductance (Ld)               | 3-10       | Preset Reference             | 5-11 | Terminal 19 Digital Input            | 6-17        | Terminal 53 Live Zero                |
| 0-38 | Display Text 2                       | 1-39 | Motor Poles                          | 3-11       | Jog Speed [Hz]               | 5-12 | Terminal 27 Digital Input            | 6-2*        | <b>Analog Input 54</b>               |
| 0-39 | Display Text 3                       | 1-40 | Back EMF at 1000 RPM                 | 3-13       | Reference Site               | 5-13 | Terminal 29 Digital Input            | 6-20        | Terminal 54 Low Voltage              |
| 0-40 | [Hand on] Key on LCP                 | 1-46 | Position Detection Gain              | 3-14       | Preset Relative Reference    | 5-14 | Terminal 32 Digital Input            | 6-21        | Terminal 54 High Voltage             |
| 0-41 | [Off] Key on LCP                     | 1-5* | <b>Load Indep. Setting</b>           | 3-15       | Reference 1 Source           | 5-15 | Terminal 33 Digital Input            | 6-22        | Terminal 54 Low Current              |
| 0-42 | [Auto on] Key on LCP                 | 1-50 | Motor Magnetisation at Zero Speed    | 3-16       | Reference 2 Source           | 5-16 | Terminal X30/2 Digital Input         | 6-23        | Terminal 54 High Current             |
| 0-43 | [Reset] Key on LCP                   | 1-51 | Min Speed Normal Magnetising [RPM]   | 3-17       | Reference 3 Source           | 5-17 | Terminal X30/3 Digital Input         | 6-24        | Terminal 54 Low Ref./Feedb. Value    |
| 0-44 | [Off/Reset] Key on LCP               | 1-52 | Min Speed Normal Magnetising [Hz]    | 3-19       | Jog Speed [RPM]              | 5-18 | Terminal X30/4 Digital Input         | 6-25        | Terminal 54 High Ref./Feedb. Value   |
| 0-45 | [Drive Bypass] Key on LCP            | 1-58 | Flystart Test Pulses Current         | 3-4*       | <b>Ramp 1</b>                | 5-19 | Terminal 37 Safe Stop                | 6-26        | Terminal 54 Filter Time Constant     |
| 0-5* | <b>Copy/Save</b>                     | 1-59 | Flystart Test Pulses Frequency       | 3-41       | Ramp 1 Ramp Up Time          | 5-3* | <b>Digital Outputs</b>               | 6-27        | Terminal 54 Live Zero                |
| 0-50 | LCP Copy                             | 1-6* | <b>Load Depen. Setting</b>           | 3-42       | Ramp 1 Ramp Down Time        | 5-30 | Terminal 27 Digital Output           | 6-3*        | <b>Analog Input X30/11</b>           |
| 0-51 | Set-up Copy                          | 1-60 | Low Speed Load Compensation          | 3-5*       | <b>Ramp 2</b>                | 5-31 | Terminal 29 Digital Output           | 6-30        | Terminal X30/11 Low Voltage          |
| 0-6* | <b>Password</b>                      | 1-61 | High Speed Load Compensation         | 3-51       | Ramp 2 Ramp Up Time          | 5-32 | Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101)        | 6-31        | Terminal X30/11 High Voltage         |
| 0-60 | Main Menu Password                   | 1-62 | Slip Compensation                    | 3-52       | Ramp 2 Ramp Down Time        | 5-33 | Relays                               | 6-34        | Term. X30/11 Low Ref./Feedb. Value   |
| 0-61 | Access to Main Menu w/o Password     | 1-63 | Slip Compensation Time Constant      | 3-8*       | <b>Other Ramps</b>           | 5-4* | Function Relay                       | 6-35        | Term. X30/11 High Ref./Feedb. Value  |
| 0-65 | Personal Menu Password               | 1-64 | Resonance Dampening                  | 3-80       | Jog Ramp Time                | 5-40 | On Delay, Relay                      | 6-36        | Term. X30/11 Filter Time Constant    |
| 0-66 | Access to Personal Menu w/o Password | 1-65 | Resonance Dampening Time Constant    | 3-81       | Quick Stop Ramp Time         | 5-41 | Off Delay, Relay                     | 6-37        | Term. X30/11 Live Zero               |
| 0-67 | Bus Access Password                  | 1-66 | Min. Current at Low Speed            | 3-82       | Starting Ramp Up Time        | 5-42 | <b>Pulse Input</b>                   | 6-4*        | <b>Analog Input X30/12</b>           |
| 0-7* | <b>Clock Settings</b>                | 1-7* | <b>Start Adjustments</b>             | 3-9*       | <b>Digital Pot.Meter</b>     | 5-5* | Term. 29 Low Frequency               | 6-40        | Terminal X30/12 Low Voltage          |
| 0-70 | Date and Time                        | 1-70 | PM Start Mode                        | 3-90       | Step Size                    | 5-50 | Term. 29 High Frequency              | 6-41        | Terminal X30/12 High Voltage         |
| 0-71 | Date Format                          | 1-71 | Start Delay                          | 3-91       | Ramp Time                    | 5-51 | Term. 29 Low Ref./Feedb. Value       | 6-44        | Term. X30/12 Low Ref./Feedb. Value   |
| 0-72 | Time Format                          | 1-72 | Start Function                       | 3-92       | Power Restore                | 5-52 | Term. 29 High Ref./Feedb. Value      | 6-45        | Term. X30/12 High Ref./Feedb. Value  |
| 0-74 | DST/Summerime                        | 1-73 | Flying Start                         | 3-93       | Maximum Limit                | 5-53 | Pulse Filter Time Constant #29       | 6-46        | Term. X30/12 Filter Time Constant    |
| 0-76 | DST/Summerime Start                  | 1-77 | Compressor Start Max Speed [RPM]     | 3-94       | Minimum Limit                | 5-54 | Term. 33 Low Frequency               | 6-47        | Term. X30/12 Live Zero               |
| 0-77 | DST/Summerime End                    | 1-78 | Compressor Start Max Speed [Hz]      | 3-95       | Ramp Delay                   | 5-55 | Term. 33 High Frequency              | 6-50        | <b>Analog Output 42</b>              |
| 0-79 | Clock Fault                          | 1-8* | <b>Stop Adjustments</b>              | 4-*        | <b>Limits / Warnings</b>     | 5-6* | Term. 33 High Ref./Feedb. Value      | 6-51        | Terminal 42 Output                   |
| 0-81 | Working Days                         | 1-80 | Function at Stop                     | 4-10       | Motor Speed Direction        | 5-57 | Term. 33 High Ref./Feedb. Value      | 6-52        | Terminal 42 Output Min Scale         |
| 0-82 | Additional Working Days              | 1-81 | Min Speed for Function at Stop [RPM] | 4-11       | Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]  | 5-58 | Pulse Filter Time Constant #33       | 6-53        | Terminal 42 Output Max Scale         |
| 0-83 | Additional Non-Working Days          | 1-82 | Min Speed for Function at Stop [Hz]  | 4-12       | Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]   | 5-59 | <b>Pulse Output</b>                  | 6-54        | Terminal 42 Output Bus Control       |
| 0-88 | Date and Time Readout                | 1-86 | Trip Speed Low [RPM]                 | 4-13       | Motor Speed High Limit [RPM] | 5-60 | Terminal 27 Pulse Output Variable    | 6-55        | Analog Output Filter                 |
| 1-0* | <b>Load and Motor</b>                | 1-87 | Trip Speed Low [Hz]                  | 4-14       | Motor Speed High Limit [Hz]  | 5-62 | Pulse Output Max Freq #27            | 6-6*        | <b>Analog Output X30/8</b>           |
| 1-0* | <b>General Settings</b>              | 1-87 | Motor Temperature                    | 4-16       | Torque Limit Motor Mode      | 5-63 | Terminal 29 Pulse Output Variable    | 6-60        | Terminal X30/8 Output                |
| 1-00 | Configuration Mode                   | 1-90 | Motor Thermal Protection             | 4-17       | Torque Limit Generator Mode  | 5-65 | Pulse Output Max Freq #29            | 6-61        | Terminal X30/8 Min. Scale            |
|      |                                      | 1-91 | Motor External Fan                   | 4-18       | Current Limit                | 5-66 | Terminal X30/6 Pulse Output Variable | 6-62        | Terminal X30/8 Max. Scale            |

|      |                                      |       |                                 |       |                                 |       |                                     |       |                                   |
|------|--------------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------|-------|-------------------------------------|-------|-----------------------------------|
| 6-63 | Terminal X30/8 Output Bus Control    | 9-15  | PCD Write Configuration         | 12-2* | Process Data                    | 14-01 | Switching Frequency                 | 15-23 | Historic log: Date and Time       |
| 6-64 | Terminal X30/8 Output Timeout Preset | 9-16  | PCD Read Configuration          | 12-20 | Control Instance                | 14-03 | Overmodulation                      | 15-3* | Alarm Log                         |
| 8-0* | <b>Comm. and Options</b>             | 9-18  | Node Address                    | 12-21 | Process Data Config Write       | 14-04 | PWM Random                          | 15-30 | Alarm Log: Error Code             |
| 8-01 | Control Site                         | 9-22  | Telegram Selection              | 12-22 | Process Data Config Read        | 14-1* | Mains On/Off                        | 15-31 | Alarm Log: Value                  |
| 8-02 | Control Source                       | 9-27  | Parameters for Signals          | 12-27 | Primary Master                  | 14-10 | Mains Failure                       | 15-32 | Alarm Log: Time                   |
| 8-03 | Control Timeout                      | 9-28  | Parameter Edit                  | 12-28 | Store Data Values               | 14-11 | Mains Voltage at Mains Fault        | 15-33 | Alarm Log: Date and Time          |
| 8-04 | Control Timeout Function             | 9-44  | Process Control                 | 12-29 | Store Data Always               | 14-12 | Function at Mains Imbalance         | 15-4* | Drive Identification              |
| 8-05 | End-of-Timeout Function              | 9-45  | Fault Message Counter           | 12-3* | EtherNet/IP                     | 14-2* | Reset Functions                     | 15-40 | FC Type                           |
| 8-06 | Reset Control Timeout                | 9-47  | Fault Code                      | 12-30 | Warning Parameter               | 14-20 | Reset Mode                          | 15-41 | Power Section                     |
| 8-07 | Diagnosis Trigger                    | 9-52  | Fault Number                    | 12-31 | Net Reference                   | 14-21 | Automatic Restart Time              | 15-42 | Voltage                           |
| 8-08 | Readout Filtering                    | 9-53  | Fault-Situation Counter         | 12-32 | Net Control                     | 14-22 | Operation Mode                      | 15-43 | Software Version                  |
| 8-09 | Communication Charset                | 9-63  | Profibus Warning Word           | 12-33 | CIP Revision                    | 14-23 | Typecode Setting                    | 15-44 | Ordered Typecode String           |
| 8-1* | <b>Control Settings</b>              | 9-64  | Actual Baud Rate                | 12-34 | CIP Product Code                | 14-25 | Trip Delay at Torque Limit          | 15-45 | Actual Typecode String            |
| 8-10 | Control Profile                      | 9-65  | Device Identification           | 12-35 | EDS Parameter                   | 14-26 | Trip Delay at Inverter Fault        | 15-46 | Frequency Converter Ordering No   |
| 8-13 | Configurable Status Word STW         | 9-65  | Profile Number                  | 12-37 | COS Inhibit Timer               | 14-28 | Production Settings                 | 15-47 | Power Card Ordering No            |
| 8-3* | <b>FC Port Settings</b>              | 9-67  | Control Word 1                  | 12-38 | COS Filter                      | 14-29 | Service Code                        | 15-48 | LCP Id No                         |
| 8-30 | Protocol                             | 9-68  | Status Word 1                   | 12-4* | Modbus TCP                      | 14-3* | Current Limit Ctrl.                 | 15-49 | SW ID Control Card                |
| 8-31 | Address                              | 9-71  | Profibus Save Data Values       | 12-40 | Status Parameter                | 14-30 | Current Lim Ctrl, Proportional Gain | 15-50 | SW ID Power Card                  |
| 8-32 | Baud Rate                            | 9-72  | ProfibusDriveReset              | 12-41 | Slave Message Count             | 14-31 | Current Lim Ctrl, Integration Time  | 15-51 | Frequency Converter Serial Number |
| 8-33 | Parity / Stop Bits                   | 9-75  | DO Identification               | 12-42 | Slave Exception Message Count   | 14-32 | Current Lim Ctrl, Filter Time       | 15-53 | Power Card Serial Number          |
| 8-34 | Estimated cycle time                 | 9-80  | Defined Parameters (1)          | 12-8* | Other Ethernet Services         | 14-4* | Energy Optimising                   | 15-55 | Vendor URL                        |
| 8-35 | Minimum Response Delay               | 9-81  | Defined Parameters (2)          | 12-80 | FTP Server                      | 14-40 | VT Level                            | 15-56 | Vendor Name                       |
| 8-36 | Maximum Response Delay               | 9-82  | Defined Parameters (3)          | 12-81 | HTTP Server                     | 14-41 | AEO Minimum Magnetisation           | 15-59 | CSV Filename                      |
| 8-37 | Maximum Inter-Char Delay             | 9-83  | Defined Parameters (4)          | 12-82 | SMTP Service                    | 14-42 | Minimum AEO Frequency               | 15-6* | Option Ident                      |
| 8-4* | <b>FC protocol set</b>               | 9-84  | Defined Parameters (5)          | 12-89 | Transparent Socket Channel Port | 14-43 | Motor Cosphi                        | 15-60 | Option Mounted                    |
| 8-40 | Telegram Selection                   | 9-90  | Changed Parameters (1)          | 12-9* | Advanced Ethernet Services      | 14-5* | Environment                         | 15-61 | Option SW Version                 |
| 8-42 | PCD Write Configuration              | 9-91  | Changed Parameters (2)          | 12-90 | Cable Diagnostic                | 14-50 | RFI Filter                          | 15-62 | Option Ordering No                |
| 8-43 | PCD Read Configuration               | 9-92  | Changed Parameters (3)          | 12-91 | Auto Cross Over                 | 14-51 | DC Link Compensation                | 15-63 | Option Serial No                  |
| 8-5* | <b>Digital/Bus</b>                   | 9-93  | Changed Parameters (4)          | 12-92 | IGMP Snooping                   | 14-52 | Fan Control                         | 15-70 | Option in Slot A                  |
| 8-50 | Coasting Select                      | 9-99  | Changed Parameters (5)          | 12-93 | Cable Error Length              | 14-53 | Fan Monitor                         | 15-71 | Slot A Option SW Version          |
| 8-52 | DC Brake Select                      | 11-0* | <b>LonWorks</b>                 | 12-94 | Broadcast Storm Protection      | 14-55 | Output Filter                       | 15-72 | Option in Slot B                  |
| 8-53 | Reversing Select                     | 11-0* | LonWorks ID                     | 12-95 | Broadcast Storm Filter          | 14-59 | Actual Number of Inverter Units     | 15-73 | Slot B Option SW Version          |
| 8-54 | Set-up Select                        | 11-10 | Neuron ID                       | 12-96 | Port Config                     | 14-6* | Auto Derate                         | 15-8* | Operating Data II                 |
| 8-55 | Preset Reference Select              | 11-1* | Lon Functions                   | 12-99 | Interface Counters              | 14-60 | Function at Over Temperature        | 15-80 | Fan Running Hours                 |
| 8-7* | <b>BACnet</b>                        | 11-15 | Lon Warning Word                | 13-0* | SLC Settings                    | 14-61 | Function at Inverter Overload       | 15-81 | Preset Fan Running Hours          |
| 8-70 | BACnet Device Instance               | 11-17 | XIF Revision                    | 13-0* | SL Controller Mode              | 14-62 | Inv. Overload Derate Current        | 15-9* | Parameter Info                    |
| 8-72 | M5/TP Max Masters                    | 11-18 | LonWorks Revision               | 13-01 | Start Event                     | 15-0* | Drive Information                   | 15-92 | Modified Parameters               |
| 8-73 | M5/TP Max Info Frames                | 11-2* | Lon Param. Access               | 13-02 | Stop Event                      | 15-0* | Operating Data                      | 15-98 | Drive Identification              |
| 8-74 | "I-Am" Service                       | 11-21 | Store Data Values               | 13-03 | Reset SLC                       | 15-00 | Operating hours                     | 15-99 | Parameter Metadata                |
| 8-75 | Initialisation Password              | 12-2* | <b>Ethernet</b>                 | 13-1* | Comparators                     | 15-01 | Running hours                       | 16-0* | Data Readouts                     |
| 8-8* | <b>FC Port Diagnostics</b>           | 12-0* | <b>IP Settings</b>              | 13-10 | Comparator Operand              | 15-02 | kWh Counter                         | 16-0* | General Status                    |
| 8-80 | Bus Message Count                    | 12-01 | IP Address Assignment           | 13-11 | Comparator Operator             | 15-03 | Power Up's                          | 16-00 | Control Word                      |
| 8-81 | Bus Error Count                      | 12-02 | Subnet Mask                     | 13-12 | Comparator Value                | 15-04 | Over Temp's                         | 16-01 | Reference [Unit]                  |
| 8-82 | Slave Messages Rcvd                  | 12-03 | Default Gateway                 | 13-2* | Timers                          | 15-05 | Over Volt's                         | 16-02 | Reference [%]                     |
| 8-83 | Slave Error Count                    | 12-04 | DHCP Server                     | 13-20 | SL Controller Timer             | 15-06 | Reset kWh Counter                   | 16-03 | Status Word                       |
| 8-84 | Slave Messages Sent                  | 12-05 | Lease Expires                   | 13-4* | Logic Rules                     | 15-07 | Reset Running Hours Counter         | 16-05 | Main Actual Value [%]             |
| 8-85 | Slave Timeout Errors                 | 12-06 | Name Servers                    | 13-40 | Logic Rule Boolean 1            | 15-08 | Number of Starts                    | 16-09 | Custom Readout                    |
| 8-89 | <b>Diagnostics Count</b>             | 12-07 | Domain Name                     | 13-41 | Logic Rule Operator 1           | 15-1* | Data Log Settings                   | 16-1* | Motor Status                      |
| 8-90 | Bus Jog / Feedback                   | 12-08 | Host Name                       | 13-42 | Logic Rule Boolean 2            | 15-10 | Logging Source                      | 16-10 | Power [kW]                        |
| 8-91 | Bus Jog 1 Speed                      | 12-09 | Physical Address                | 13-43 | Logic Rule Operator 2           | 15-11 | Logging Interval                    | 16-11 | Power [hp]                        |
| 8-94 | Bus Feedback 1                       | 12-1* | <b>Ethernet Link Parameters</b> | 13-44 | Logic Rule Boolean 3            | 15-12 | Trigger Event                       | 16-12 | Motor Voltage                     |
| 8-95 | Bus Feedback 2                       | 12-10 | Link Status                     | 13-51 | SL Controller Event             | 15-13 | Logging Mode                        | 16-13 | Frequency                         |
| 8-96 | Bus Feedback 3                       | 12-11 | Link Duration                   | 13-52 | SL Controller Action            | 15-14 | Samples Before Trigger              | 16-14 | Motor current                     |
| 9-00 | Setpoint                             | 12-12 | Auto Negotiation                | 14-0* | <b>Special Functions</b>        | 15-2* | Historic Log                        | 16-15 | Frequency [%]                     |
| 9-07 | Actual Value                         | 12-13 | Link Speed                      | 14-0* | Inverter Switching              | 15-20 | Historic Log: Event                 | 16-16 | Torque [Nm]                       |
|      |                                      | 12-14 | Link Duplex                     | 14-00 | Switching Pattern               | 15-21 | Historic Log: Value                 | 16-17 | Speed [RPM]                       |
|      |                                      |       |                                 |       |                                 | 15-22 | Historic Log: Time                  | 16-18 | Motor Thermal                     |
|      |                                      |       |                                 |       |                                 |       |                                     | 16-20 | Motor Angle                       |

|              |                               |              |                             |              |                                   |              |                               |
|--------------|-------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|
| 16-22        | Torque [%]                    | 20-79        | PID Autotuning              | 21-57        | Ext. 3 Reference [Unit]           | 22-85        | Speed at Design Point [RPM]   |
| 16-26        | Power Filtered [kW]           | <b>20-8*</b> | <b>PID Basic Settings</b>   | 21-58        | Ext. 3 Feedback [Unit]            | 22-86        | Speed at Design Point [Hz]    |
| 16-27        | Power Filtered [hp]           | 20-81        | PID Normal/ Inverse Control | 21-59        | Ext. 3 Output [%]                 | 22-87        | Pressure at No-Flow Speed     |
| <b>16-3*</b> | <b>Drive Status</b>           | 20-82        | PID Start Speed [RPM]       | <b>21-6*</b> | <b>Ext. CL 3 PID</b>              | 22-88        | Pressure at Rated Speed       |
| 16-30        | DC Link Voltage               | 20-83        | PID Start Speed [Hz]        | 21-60        | Ext. 3 Normal/Inverse Control     | 22-89        | Flow at Design Point          |
| 16-32        | Brake Energy /s               | 20-84        | On Reference Bandwidth      | 21-61        | Ext. 3 Proportional Gain          | 22-90        | Flow at Rated Speed           |
| 16-33        | Brake Energy /2 min           | <b>20-9*</b> | <b>PID Controller</b>       | 21-62        | Ext. 3 Integral Time              | <b>23-*</b>  | <b>Time-based Functions</b>   |
| 16-34        | Heatsink Temp.                | 20-91        | PID Anti Windup             | 21-63        | Ext. 3 Differentiation Time       | <b>23-0*</b> | <b>Timed Actions</b>          |
| 16-35        | Inverter Thermal              | 20-93        | PID Proportional Gain       | 21-64        | Ext. 3 Dif. Gain Limit            | 23-00        | ON Time                       |
| 16-36        | Inv. Nom. Current             | 20-94        | PID Integral Time           | <b>22-*</b>  | <b>Appl. Functions</b>            | 23-01        | ON Action                     |
| 16-37        | Inv. Max. Current             | 20-95        | PID Differentiation Time    | <b>22-0*</b> | <b>Miscellaneous</b>              | 23-02        | OFF Time                      |
| 16-38        | SL Controller State           | 20-96        | PID Diff. Gain Limit        | 22-00        | External Interlock Delay          | 23-03        | OFF Action                    |
| 16-39        | Control Card Temp.            | <b>21-*</b>  | <b>Ext. CL Autotuning</b>   | 22-01        | Power Filter Time                 | 23-04        | Occurrence                    |
| 16-40        | Logging Buffer Full           | 21-00        | Closed Loop Type            | <b>22-2*</b> | <b>No-Flow Detection</b>          | <b>23-0*</b> | <b>Timed Actions Settings</b> |
| 16-41        | Logging Buffer Full           | 21-01        | PID Performance             | 22-20        | Low Power Auto Set-up             | 23-08        | Timed Actions Mode            |
| 16-43        | Timed Actions Status          | 21-02        | PID Output Change           | 22-21        | Low Speed Detection               | 23-09        | Timed Actions Reactivation    |
| 16-49        | Current Fault Source          | 21-03        | Minimum Feedback Level      | 22-22        | Low Speed Detection               | <b>23-1*</b> | <b>Maintenance</b>            |
| <b>16-5*</b> | <b>Ref. &amp; Feeds.</b>      | 21-04        | Maximum Feedback Level      | 22-23        | No-Flow Function                  | 23-10        | Maintenance Item              |
| 16-50        | External Reference            | 21-05        | PID Autotuning              | 22-24        | No-Flow Delay                     | 23-11        | Maintenance Action            |
| 16-52        | Feedback[Unit]                | <b>21-1*</b> | <b>Ext. CL 1 Ref./Fb.</b>   | 22-26        | Dry Pump Function                 | 23-12        | Maintenance Time Base         |
| 16-53        | Digi Pot Reference            | 21-10        | Ext. 1 Ref./Feedback Unit   | 22-27        | Dry Pump Delay                    | 23-13        | Maintenance Time Interval     |
| 16-54        | Feedback 1 [Unit]             | <b>20-*</b>  | <b>Drive Closed Loop</b>    | <b>22-3*</b> | <b>No-Flow Power Tuning</b>       | 23-14        | Maintenance Date and Time     |
| 16-55        | Feedback 2 [Unit]             | 20-00        | Feedback 1 Source           | 22-30        | No-Flow Power                     | <b>23-1*</b> | <b>Maintenance Reset</b>      |
| 16-56        | Feedback 3 [Unit]             | 20-01        | Feedback 1 Conversion       | 22-31        | Power Correction Factor           | 23-15        | Reset Maintenance Word        |
| 16-58        | PID Output [%]                | 20-02        | Feedback 1 Source Unit      | 22-32        | Low Speed [RPM]                   | 23-16        | Maintenance Text              |
| <b>16-6*</b> | <b>Inputs &amp; Outputs</b>   | 20-02        | Feedback 2 Source           | 22-33        | Low Speed [Hz]                    | <b>23-5*</b> | <b>Energy Log</b>             |
| 16-60        | Digital Input                 | 20-03        | Feedback 2 Source Unit      | 22-34        | Low Speed Power [kW]              | 23-50        | Energy Log Resolution         |
| 16-61        | Terminal 53 Switch Setting    | 20-04        | Feedback 2 Conversion       | 22-35        | Low Speed Power [HP]              | 23-51        | Period Start                  |
| 16-62        | Analog Input 53               | 20-05        | Feedback 2 Source Unit      | 22-36        | High Speed [RPM]                  | 23-53        | Energy Log                    |
| 16-63        | Terminal 54 Switch Setting    | 20-06        | Feedback 3 Source           | 22-37        | High Speed [Hz]                   | 23-54        | Reset Energy Log              |
| 16-64        | Analog Input 54               | 20-07        | Feedback 3 Conversion       | 22-38        | High Speed Power [kW]             | <b>23-6*</b> | <b>Trending</b>               |
| 16-65        | Analog Output 42 [mA]         | 20-08        | Feedback 3 Source Unit      | 22-39        | High Speed Power [HP]             | 23-60        | Trend Variable                |
| 16-66        | Digital Output [bin]          | 20-12        | Reference/Feedback Unit     | <b>22-4*</b> | <b>Sleep Mode</b>                 | 23-61        | Continuous Bin Data           |
| 16-67        | Pulse Input #29 [Hz]          | 20-13        | Minimum Reference/Feedb.    | 22-40        | Minimum Run Time                  | 23-62        | Timed Bin Data                |
| 16-68        | Pulse Input #33 [Hz]          | 20-14        | Maximum Reference/Feedb.    | 22-41        | Minimum Speed Time                | 23-63        | Timed Period Start            |
| 16-69        | Pulse Output #27 [Hz]         | <b>20-2*</b> | <b>Feedback/Setpoint</b>    | 22-42        | Wake-up Speed [RPM]               | 23-64        | Timed Period Stop             |
| 16-70        | Pulse Output #29 [Hz]         | 20-20        | Feedback Function           | 22-43        | Wake-up Speed [Hz]                | 23-65        | Minimum Bin Value             |
| 16-71        | Relay Output [bin]            | 20-21        | Setpoint 1                  | 22-44        | Wake-up Ref./FB Difference        | 23-66        | Reset Continuous Bin Data     |
| 16-72        | Counter A                     | 20-22        | Setpoint 2                  | 22-45        | Setpoint Boost                    | 23-67        | Reset Timed Bin Data          |
| 16-73        | Counter B                     | 20-23        | Setpoint 3                  | <b>22-5*</b> | <b>End of Curve</b>               | <b>23-8*</b> | <b>Payback Counter</b>        |
| 16-75        | Analog In X30/11              | <b>20-3*</b> | <b>Feeds. Adv. Conv.</b>    | 22-50        | End of Curve Function             | 23-80        | Power Reference Factor        |
| 16-76        | Analog In X30/12              | 20-30        | Refrigerant                 | 22-51        | End of Curve Delay                | 23-81        | Energy Cost                   |
| 16-77        | Analog Out X30/8 [mA]         | 20-31        | User Defined Refrigerant A1 | 22-52        | Broken Belt Detection             | 23-82        | Investment                    |
| <b>16-8*</b> | <b>Fieldbus &amp; FC Port</b> | 20-32        | User Defined Refrigerant A2 | <b>22-6*</b> | <b>Broken Belt Detection</b>      | 23-83        | Energy Savings                |
| 16-80        | Fieldbus CTW 1                | 20-33        | User Defined Refrigerant A3 | 22-60        | Broken Belt Function              | 23-84        | Cost Savings                  |
| 16-82        | Fieldbus REF 1                | 20-34        | Duct 1 Area [m2]            | 22-61        | Broken Belt Torque                | <b>24-*</b>  | <b>Appl. Functions 2</b>      |
| 16-84        | Comm. Option STW              | 20-35        | Duct 1 Area [in2]           | 22-62        | Broken Belt Delay                 | <b>24-0*</b> | <b>Fire Mode</b>              |
| 16-85        | FC Port CTW 1                 | 20-36        | Duct 2 Area [m2]            | <b>22-7*</b> | <b>Short Cycle Protection</b>     | 24-00        | Fire Mode Function            |
| 16-86        | FC Port REF 1                 | 20-37        | Duct 2 Area [in2]           | 22-75        | Short Cycle Protection            | 24-01        | Fire Mode Configuration       |
| <b>16-9*</b> | <b>Diagnosis Readouts</b>     | 20-38        | Air Density Factor [%]      | 22-76        | Interval between Starts           | 24-02        | Fire Mode Unit                |
| 16-90        | Alarm Word                    | <b>20-6*</b> | <b>Sensorless</b>           | 22-77        | Minimum Run Time                  | 24-03        | Fire Mode Min Reference       |
| 16-91        | Alarm Word 2                  | 20-60        | Sensorless Unit             | 22-78        | Minimum Run Time                  | 24-04        | Fire Mode Max Reference       |
| 16-92        | Warning Word                  | 20-69        | Sensorless Information      | 22-79        | Minimum Run Time Override Value   | 24-05        | Fire Mode Preset Reference    |
| 16-93        | Warning Word 2                | <b>20-7*</b> | <b>PID Autotuning</b>       | <b>22-8*</b> | <b>Flow Compensation</b>          | 24-06        | Fire Mode Reference Source    |
| 16-94        | Ext. Status Word              | 20-70        | Closed Loop Type            | 22-80        | Flow Compensation                 | 24-07        | Fire Mode Feedback Source     |
| 16-95        | Ext. Status Word 2            | 20-71        | PID Performance             | 22-81        | Square-linear Curve Approximation | 24-09        | Fire Mode Alarm Handling      |
| 16-96        | Maintenance Word              | 20-72        | PID Output Change           | 22-82        | Work Point Calculation            | <b>24-1*</b> | <b>Drive Bypass</b>           |
| <b>18-*</b>  | <b>Info &amp; Readouts</b>    | 20-73        | Minimum Feedback Level      | 22-83        | Speed at No-Flow [RPM]            | 24-10        | Drive Bypass Function         |
| <b>18-0*</b> | <b>Maintenance Log</b>        | 20-74        | Maximum Feedback Level      | 22-84        | Speed at No-Flow [Hz]             | 24-11        | Drive Bypass Delay Time       |

|       |                             |       |                                    |       |                                    |       |                          |
|-------|-----------------------------|-------|------------------------------------|-------|------------------------------------|-------|--------------------------|
| 24-9* | Multi-Motor Funct.          | 25-91 | Manual Alternation                 | 35-00 | Term. X48/4 Temperature Unit       | 99-2* | Platform Readouts        |
| 24-90 | Missing Motor Function      | 26-** | Analog I/O Option                  | 35-01 | Term. X48/4 Input Type             | 99-29 | Platform Version         |
| 24-91 | Missing Motor Coefficient 1 | 26-0* | Analog I/O Mode                    | 35-02 | Term. X48/7 Temperature Unit       | 99-4* | Software Control         |
| 24-92 | Missing Motor Coefficient 2 | 26-00 | Terminal X42/1 Mode                | 35-03 | Term. X48/7 Input Type             | 99-40 | Startup Wizard State     |
| 24-93 | Missing Motor Coefficient 3 | 26-01 | Terminal X42/3 Mode                | 35-04 | Term. X48/10 Temperature Unit      | 99-5* | PC Debug                 |
| 24-94 | Missing Motor Coefficient 4 | 26-02 | Terminal X42/5 Mode                | 35-05 | Term. X48/10 Input Type            | 99-50 | PC Debug Selection       |
| 24-95 | Locked Rotor Function       | 26-1* | Analog Input X42/1                 | 35-06 | Temperature Sensor Alarm Function  | 99-51 | PC Debug 0               |
| 24-96 | Locked Rotor Coefficient 1  | 26-10 | Terminal X42/1 Low Voltage         | 35-1* | Temp. Input X48/4                  | 99-52 | PC Debug 1               |
| 24-97 | Locked Rotor Coefficient 2  | 26-11 | Terminal X42/1 High Voltage        | 35-14 | Term. X48/4 Filter Time Constant   | 99-53 | PC Debug 2               |
| 24-98 | Locked Rotor Coefficient 3  | 26-14 | Term. X42/1 Low Ref./Feedb. Value  | 35-15 | Term. X48/4 Temp. Monitor          | 99-54 | PC Debug 3               |
| 24-99 | Locked Rotor Coefficient 4  | 26-15 | Term. X42/1 High Ref./Feedb. Value | 35-16 | Term. X48/4 Low Temp. Limit        | 99-55 | PC Debug 4               |
| 25-0* | Cascade Controller          | 26-16 | Term. X42/1 Filter Time Constant   | 35-17 | Term. X48/4 High Temp. Limit       | 99-56 | Fan 1 Feedback           |
| 25-00 | System Settings             | 26-17 | Term. X42/1 Live Zero              | 35-2* | Temp. Input X48/7                  | 99-57 | Fan 2 Feedback           |
| 25-00 | Cascade Controller          | 26-2* | Analog Input X42/3                 | 35-24 | Term. X48/7 Filter Time Constant   | 99-58 | PC Auxiliary Temp        |
| 25-02 | Motor Start                 | 26-20 | Terminal X42/3 Low Voltage         | 35-25 | Term. X48/7 Temp. Monitor          | 99-59 | Power Card Temp.         |
| 25-04 | Pump Cycling                | 26-21 | Terminal X42/3 High Voltage        | 35-26 | Term. X48/7 Low Temp. Limit        | 99-9* | Internal Values          |
| 25-05 | Fixed Lead Pump             | 26-24 | Term. X42/3 Low Ref./Feedb. Value  | 35-27 | Term. X48/7 High Temp. Limit       | 99-90 | Options present          |
| 25-06 | Number of Pumps             | 26-25 | Term. X42/3 High Ref./Feedb. Value | 35-3* | Temp. Input X48/10                 | 99-91 | Motor Power Internal     |
| 25-2* | Bandwidth Settings          | 26-26 | Term. X42/3 Filter Time Constant   | 35-34 | Term. X48/10 Filter Time Constant  | 99-92 | Motor Voltage Internal   |
| 25-20 | Staging Bandwidth           | 26-27 | Term. X42/3 Live Zero              | 35-35 | Term. X48/10 Temp. Monitor         | 99-93 | Motor Frequency Internal |
| 25-21 | Override Bandwidth          | 26-3* | Analog Input X42/5                 | 35-36 | Term. X48/10 Low Temp. Limit       | 99-94 | Imbalance derate [%]     |
| 25-22 | Fixed Speed Bandwidth       | 26-30 | Terminal X42/5 Low Voltage         | 35-37 | Term. X48/10 High Temp. Limit      | 99-95 | Temperature derate [%]   |
| 25-23 | SBW Staging Delay           | 26-31 | Terminal X42/5 High Voltage        | 35-42 | Term. X48/2 Low Current            | 99-96 | Overload derate [%]      |
| 25-24 | SBW Destaging Delay         | 26-34 | Term. X42/5 Low Ref./Feedb. Value  | 35-43 | Term. X48/2 High Current           |       |                          |
| 25-25 | OBW Time                    | 26-35 | Term. X42/5 High Ref./Feedb. Value | 35-44 | Term. X48/2 Low Ref./Feedb. Value  |       |                          |
| 25-26 | Destage At No-Flow          | 26-36 | Term. X42/5 Filter Time Constant   | 35-45 | Term. X48/2 High Ref./Feedb. Value |       |                          |
| 25-27 | Stage Function              | 26-37 | Term. X42/5 Live Zero              | 35-46 | Term. X48/2 Filter Time Constant   |       |                          |
| 25-28 | Stage Function Time         | 26-4* | Analog Out X42/7                   | 35-47 | Term. X48/2 Live Zero              |       |                          |
| 25-29 | Destage Function            | 26-40 | Terminal X42/7 Output              | 99-*  | Devcl support                      |       |                          |
| 25-30 | Destage Function Time       | 26-41 | Terminal X42/7 Min. Scale          | 99-0* | DSP Debug                          |       |                          |
| 25-4* | Staging Settings            | 26-42 | Terminal X42/7 Max. Scale          | 99-00 | DAC 1 selection                    |       |                          |
| 25-40 | Ramp Down Delay             | 26-43 | Terminal X42/7 Bus Control         | 99-01 | DAC 2 selection                    |       |                          |
| 25-41 | Ramp Up Delay               | 26-44 | Terminal X42/7 Timeout Preset      | 99-02 | DAC 3 selection                    |       |                          |
| 25-42 | Staging Threshold           | 26-5* | Analog Out X42/9                   | 99-03 | DAC 4 selection                    |       |                          |
| 25-43 | Destaging Threshold         | 26-50 | Terminal X42/9 Output              | 99-04 | DAC 1 scale                        |       |                          |
| 25-44 | Staging Speed [RPM]         | 26-51 | Terminal X42/9 Min. Scale          | 99-05 | DAC 2 scale                        |       |                          |
| 25-45 | Staging Speed [Hz]          | 26-52 | Terminal X42/9 Max. Scale          | 99-06 | DAC 3 scale                        |       |                          |
| 25-46 | Destaging Speed [RPM]       | 26-53 | Terminal X42/9 Bus Control         | 99-07 | DAC 4 scale                        |       |                          |
| 25-47 | Destaging Speed [Hz]        | 26-54 | Terminal X42/9 Timeout Preset      | 99-08 | Test param 1                       |       |                          |
| 25-5* | Alternation Settings        | 26-6* | Analog Out X42/11                  | 99-09 | Test param 2                       |       |                          |
| 25-50 | Lead Pump Alternation       | 26-60 | Terminal X42/11 Output             | 99-10 | DAC Option Slot                    |       |                          |
| 25-51 | Alternation Event           | 26-61 | Terminal X42/11 Min. Scale         | 99-1* | Hardware Control                   |       |                          |
| 25-52 | Alternation Time Interval   | 26-62 | Terminal X42/11 Max. Scale         | 99-11 | RFI 2                              |       |                          |
| 25-53 | Alternation Timer Value     | 26-63 | Terminal X42/11 Bus Control        | 99-12 | Fan                                |       |                          |
| 25-54 | Alternation Predefined Time | 30-*  | Special Features                   | 99-1* | Software Readouts                  |       |                          |
| 25-55 | Alternate if Load < 50%     | 30-2* | Adv. Start Adjust                  | 99-13 | Idle time                          |       |                          |
| 25-56 | Staging Mode at Alternation | 30-22 | Locked Rotor Detection             | 99-14 | Paramdb requests in queue          |       |                          |
| 25-58 | Run Next Pump Delay         | 30-23 | Locked Rotor Detection Time [s]    | 99-15 | Secondary Timer at Inverter Fault  |       |                          |
| 25-59 | Run on Mains Delay          | 31-*  | Bypass Option                      | 99-16 | No of Current Sensors              |       |                          |
| 25-8* | Status                      | 31-00 | Bypass Mode                        | 99-2* | Heatsink Readouts                  |       |                          |
| 25-80 | Cascade Status              | 31-01 | Bypass Start Time Delay            | 99-20 | HS Temp. (PC1)                     |       |                          |
| 25-81 | Pump Status                 | 31-02 | Bypass Trip Time Delay             | 99-21 | HS Temp. (PC2)                     |       |                          |
| 25-82 | Lead Pump                   | 31-03 | Test Mode Activation               | 99-22 | HS Temp. (PC3)                     |       |                          |
| 25-83 | Relay Status                | 31-10 | Bypass Status Word                 | 99-23 | HS Temp. (PC4)                     |       |                          |
| 25-84 | Pump ON Time                | 31-11 | Bypass Running Hours               | 99-24 | HS Temp. (PC5)                     |       |                          |
| 25-85 | Relay ON Time               | 31-19 | Remote Bypass Activation           | 99-25 | HS Temp. (PC6)                     |       |                          |
| 25-86 | Reset Relay Counters        | 35-9* | Sensor Input Option                | 99-26 | HS Temp. (PC7)                     |       |                          |
| 25-90 | Pump Interlock              | 35-0* | Temp. Input Mode                   | 99-27 | HS Temp. (PC8)                     |       |                          |



## 7 General Specifications

### Mains Supply (L1-1, L2-1, L3-1, L1-2, L2-2, L3-2)

|                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| Supply voltage | 380-500 V ±10% |
| Supply voltage | 525-690 V ±10% |

#### Mains voltage low/mains drop-out:

During low mains voltage or a mains drop-out, the frequency converter continues until the intermediate circuit voltage drops below the minimum stop level, which corresponds typically to 15% below the frequency converter's lowest rated supply voltage. Power-up and full torque cannot be expected at mains voltage lower than 10% below the frequency converter's lowest rated supply voltage.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Supply frequency                                    | 50/60 Hz ±5%                                  |
| Max. imbalance temporary between mains phases       | 3.0 % of rated supply voltage                 |
| True Power Factor ( $\lambda$ )                     | ≥ 0.9 nominal at rated load                   |
| Displacement Power Factor ( $\cos\phi$ ) near unity | (> 0.98)                                      |
| Switching on input supply L1, L2, L3 (power-ups)    | maximum once/2 min.                           |
| Environment according to EN60664-1                  | overvoltage category III / pollution degree 2 |

The unit is suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100.000 RMS symmetrical Amperes, 480/690 V maximum.

### Motor output (U, V, W)

|                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| Output voltage      | 0-100% of supply voltage |
| Output frequency    | 0-800* Hz                |
| Switching on output | Unlimited                |
| Ramp times          | 1-3600 s                 |

\* Voltage and power dependent

### Torque characteristics

|                                   |                           |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Starting torque (constant torque) | maximum 110% for 1 min.*  |
| Starting torque                   | maximum 135% up to 0.5 s* |
| Overload torque (constant torque) | maximum 110% for 1 min.*  |

\*Percentage relates to the frequency converter's nominal torque.

### Cable lengths and cross-sections

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Max. motor cable length, screened/armoured                           | 150 m   |
| Max. motor cable length, unscreened/unarmoured                       | 300 m   |
| Max. cross section to motor, mains, load sharing and brake *         |   |
| Maximum cross section to control terminals, rigid wire               | 1.5 mm <sup>2</sup> /16 AWG (2x0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> ) |
| Maximum cross section to control terminals, flexible cable           | 1 mm <sup>2</sup> /18 AWG                             |
| Maximum cross section to control terminals, cable with enclosed core | 0.5 mm <sup>2</sup> /20 AWG                           |
| Minimum cross section to control terminals                           | 0.25 mm <sup>2</sup>                                  |

\* See chapter 7.1.1 Mains Supply 3 x 380 - 500V AC - High Power and chapter 7.1.1 Electrical Data - 525 - 690 VAC for more information.

### Digital inputs

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Programmable digital inputs  | 4 (6)   |
| Terminal number              | 18, 19, 27 <sup>1)</sup> , 29 <sup>1)</sup> , 32, 33, |
| Logic                        | PNP or NPN  |
| Voltage level                | 0-24 V DC   |
| Voltage level, logic '0' PNP | <5 V DC   |
| Voltage level, logic '1' PNP | >10 V DC  |
| Voltage level, logic '0' NPN | >19 V DC  |
| Voltage level, logic '1' NPN | <14 V DC  |
| Maximum voltage on input     | 28 V DC   |

Input resistance,  $R_i$  ..... approx. 4 k $\Omega$

All digital inputs are galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

1) Terminals 27 and 29 can also be programmed as output.

Analog inputs

Number of analog inputs ..... 2

Terminal number ..... 53, 54

Modes ..... Voltage or current

Mode select ..... Switches S201 and S202

Voltage mode ..... Switch S201/S202 = OFF (U)

Voltage level ..... 0-10 V (scaleable)

Input resistance,  $R_i$  ..... approx. 10 k $\Omega$

Maximum voltage .....  $\pm 20$  V

Current mode ..... Switch S201/S202 = ON (I)

Current level ..... 0/4-20 mA (scaleable)

Input resistance,  $R_i$  ..... approx. 200  $\Omega$

Maximum current ..... 30 mA

Resolution for analog inputs ..... 10 bit (+ sign)

Accuracy of analog inputs ..... Maximum error 0.5% of full scale

Bandwidth ..... 200 Hz

The analog inputs are galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

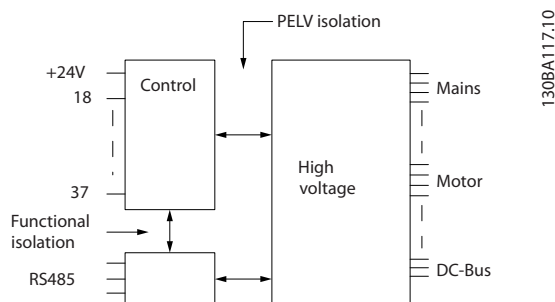


Illustration 7.1 PELV Isolation of Analog Inputs

Pulse inputs

Programmable pulse inputs ..... 2

Terminal number pulse ..... 29, 33

Maximum frequency at terminal 29, 33 ..... 110 kHz (push-pull driven)

Maximum frequency at terminal 29, 33 ..... 5 kHz (open collector)

Minimum frequency at terminal 29, 33 ..... 4 Hz

Voltage level ..... see *Digital inputs*

Maximum voltage on input ..... 28 V DC

Input resistance,  $R_i$  ..... approx. 4 k $\Omega$

Pulse input accuracy (0.1-1 kHz) ..... Maximum error 0.1% of full scale

Analog output

Number of programmable analog outputs ..... 1

Terminal number ..... 42

Current range at analog output ..... 0/4-20 mA

Maximum resistor load to common at analog output ..... 500  $\Omega$

Accuracy on analog output ..... Maximum error 0.8% of full scale

Resolution on analog output 8 bit

*The analog output is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.*

Control card, RS-485 serial communication

Terminal number 68 (P,TX+, RX+), 69 (N,TX-, RX-)

Terminal number 61 Common for terminals 68 and 69

*The RS-485 serial communication circuit is functionally separated from other central circuits and galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV).*

Digital output

Programmable digital/pulse outputs 2

Terminal number 27, 29<sup>1)</sup>

Voltage level at digital/frequency output 0-24 V

Maximum output current (sink or source) 40 mA

Maximum load at frequency output 1 k $\Omega$

Maximum capacitive load at frequency output 10 nF

Minimum output frequency at frequency output 0 Hz

Maximum output frequency at frequency output 32 kHz

Accuracy of frequency output Maximum error 0.1% of full scale

Resolution of frequency outputs 12 bit

1) Terminal 27 and 29 can also be programmed as input.

*The digital output is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.*

Control card, 24 V DC output

Terminal number 12, 13

Maximum load 200 mA

*The 24 V DC supply is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV), but has the same potential as the analog and digital inputs and outputs.*

Relay outputs

Programmable relay outputs 2

**Relay 01 Terminal number** 1-3 (break), 1-2 (make)

Maximum terminal load (AC-1)<sup>1)</sup> on 1-3 (NC), 1-2 (NO) (Resistive load) 240 V AC, 2 A

Maximum terminal load (AC-15)<sup>1)</sup> on 1-3 (NC), 1-2 (NO) (Inductive load @ cos $\phi$  0.4) 240 V AC, 0.2 A

Maximum terminal load (DC-1)<sup>1)</sup> on 1-2 (NO), 1-3 (NC) (Resistive load) 60 V DC, 1 A

Maximum terminal load (DC-13)<sup>1)</sup> on 1-2 (NO), 1-3 (NC) (Inductive load) 24 V DC, 0.1 A

**Relay 02 Terminal number** 4-6 (break), 4-5 (make)

Maximum terminal load (AC-1)<sup>1)</sup> on 4-5 (NO) (Resistive load)<sup>2)3)</sup> 400 V AC, 2 A

Maximum terminal load (AC-15)<sup>1)</sup> on 4-5 (NO) (Inductive load @ cos $\phi$  0.4) 240 V AC, 0.2 A

Maximum terminal load (DC-1)<sup>1)</sup> on 4-5 (NO) (Resistive load) 80 V DC, 2 A

Maximum terminal load (DC-13)<sup>1)</sup> on 4-5 (NO) (Inductive load) 24 V DC, 0.1 A

Maximum terminal load (AC-1)<sup>1)</sup> on 4-6 (NC) (Resistive load) 240 V AC, 2 A

Maximum terminal load (AC-15)<sup>1)</sup> on 4-6 (NC) (Inductive load @ cos $\phi$  0.4) 240 V AC, 0.2 A

Maximum terminal load (DC-1)<sup>1)</sup> on 4-6 (NC) (Resistive load) 50 V DC, 2 A

Maximum terminal load (DC-13)<sup>1)</sup> on 4-6 (NC) (Inductive load) 24 V DC, 0.1 A

Minimum terminal load on 1-3 (NC), 1-2 (NO), 4-6 (NC), 4-5 (NO) 24 V DC, 10 mA, 24 V AC, 20 mA

Environment according to EN 60664-1 overvoltage category III/pollution degree 2

1) IEC 60947 parts 4 and 5

*The relay contacts are galvanically isolated from the rest of the circuit by reinforced isolation (PELV).*

2) Overvoltage Category II

3) UL applications 300 V AC 2 A

## Control card, 10 V DC output

|                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Terminal number | 50                 |
| Output voltage  | 10.5 V $\pm$ 0.5 V |
| Maximum load    | 25 mA              |

The 10 V DC supply is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

## Control characteristics

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Resolution of output frequency at 0-590 Hz              | $\pm$ 0.003 Hz                            |
| System response time (terminals 18, 19, 27, 29, 32, 33) | $\leq$ 2 ms                               |
| Speed control range (open loop)                         | 1:100 of synchronous speed                |
| Speed accuracy (open loop)                              | 30-4000 RPM: Maximum error of $\pm$ 8 RPM |

All control characteristics are based on a 4-pole asynchronous motor.

## Surroundings

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Enclosure, frame size E  | IP00, IP21, IP54   |
| Enclosure, frame size F  | IP21, IP54   |
| Vibration test   | 0.7 g  |
| Relative humidity  | 5% - 95% (IEC 721-3-3; Class 3K3 (non-condensing) during operation |
| Aggressive environment (IEC 60068-2-43) H <sub>2</sub> S test      | class kD   |
| Test method according to IEC 60068-2-43 H <sub>2</sub> S (10 days) |  |
| Ambient temperature (at 60 AVM switching mode)                     |  |
| - with derating  | max. 55 °C <sup>1)</sup>   |
| - with full output power, typical EFF2 motors                      | max. 50 °C <sup>1)</sup>   |
| - at full continuous FC output current                             | max. 45 °C <sup>1)</sup>   |

<sup>1)</sup> For more information on derating see the Design Guide, section on Special Conditions.

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| Minimum ambient temperature during full-scale operation | 0 °C             |
| Minimum ambient temperature at reduced performance      | -10 °C           |
| Temperature during storage/transport                    | -25 to +65/70 °C |
| Maximum altitude above sea level without derating       | 1000 m           |
| Maximum altitude above sea level with derating          | 3000 m           |

Derating for high altitude, see section on special conditions in the Design Guide

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| EMC standards, Emission | EN 61800-3, EN 61000-6-3/4, EN 55011, IEC 61800-3<br>EN 61800-3, EN 61000-6-1/2, |
| EMC standards, Immunity | EN 61000-4-2, EN 61000-4-3, EN 61000-4-4, EN 61000-4-5, EN 61000-4-6             |

See section on special conditions in the Design Guide!

## Control card performance

|  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| Scan interval                          | 5 ms                     |
| Control card, USB serial communication |                          |
| USB standard                           | 1.1 (Full speed)         |
| USB plug                               | USB type B "device" plug |

**CAUTION**

Connection to PC is carried out via a standard host/device USB cable.

The USB connection is galvanically isolated from the supply voltage (PELV) and other high-voltage terminals.

The USB connection is NOT galvanically isolated from protective earth. Use only isolated laptop/PC as connection to the USB connector on the frequency converter or an isolated USB cable/converter.

## Protection and features

- Electronic thermal motor protection against overload.
- Temperature monitoring of the heat sink ensures that the frequency converter trips if the temperature reaches a predefined level. An overload temperature cannot be reset until the temperature of the heat sink is below the

values stated in the tables on the following pages (Guideline - these temperatures may vary for different power sizes, frame sizes, enclosure ratings etc.).

- The frequency converter is protected against short circuits on motor terminals U, V, W.
- If a mains phase is missing, the frequency converter trips or issues a warning (depending on the load).
- Monitoring of the intermediate circuit voltage ensures that the frequency converter trips if the intermediate circuit voltage is too low or too high.
- The frequency converter is protected against ground faults on motor terminals U, V, W.

| Mains Supply 6 x 380 - 500V AC                               |                       |                       |                       |                       |
|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
|  | P315                  | P355                  | P400                  | P450                  |
| Typical Shaft output at 400 V [kW]                           | 315                   | 355                   | 400                   | 450                   |
| Typical Shaft output at 460 V [HP]                           | 450                   | 500                   | 600                   | 600                   |
| Typical Shaft output at 500 V [kW]                           | 355                   | 400                   | 500                   | 530                   |
| Enclosure IP21   | F8/F9                 | F8/F9                 | F8/F9                 | F8/F9                 |
| Enclosure IP54   | F8/F9                 | F8/F9                 | F8/F9                 | F8/F9                 |
| Output current   |                       |                       |                       |                       |
| Continuous (at 400 V) [A]                                    | 600                   | 648                   | 745                   | 800                   |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 400 V) [A]                | 660                   | 724                   | 820                   | 880                   |
| Continuous (at 460/ 500 V) [A]                               | 540                   | 590                   | 678                   | 730                   |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 460/ 500 V) [A]           | 594                   | 649                   | 746                   | 803                   |
| Continuous KVA (at 400 V) [KVA]                              | 416                   | 456                   | 516                   | 554                   |
| Continuous KVA (at 460 V) [KVA]                              | 430                   | 470                   | 540                   | 582                   |
| Continuous KVA (at 500 V) [KVA]                              | 468                   | 511                   | 587                   | 632                   |
| Max. input current   |                       |                       |                       |                       |
| Continuous (at 400 V ) [A]                                   | 590                   | 647                   | 733                   | 787                   |
| Continuous (at 460/ 500 V) [A]                               | 531                   | 580                   | 667                   | 718                   |
| Max. cable size, mains [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )] | 4x90 (3/0)            | 4x90 (3/0)            | 4x240 (500 mcm)       | 4x240 (500 mcm)       |
| Max. cable size, motor [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )] | 4x240 (4x500 mcm)     | 4x240 (4x500 mcm)     | 4x240 (4x500 mcm)     | 4x240 (4x500 mcm)     |
| Max. cable size, brake [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )] | 2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm) | 2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm) | 2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm) | 2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm) |
| Max. external mains fuses [A] <sup>1</sup>                   | 700                   |                       |                       |                       |
| Estimated power loss at 400 V [W] <sup>4)</sup>              | 6790                  | 7701                  | 8879                  | 9670                  |
| Estimated power loss at 460 V [W]                            | 6082                  | 6953                  | 8089                  | 8803                  |
| Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]                           | 440/656               |                       |                       |                       |
| Efficiency <sup>4)</sup>                                     | 0.98                  |                       |                       |                       |
| Output frequency   | 0 - 600Hz             |                       |                       |                       |
| Heatsink overtemp. trip                                      | 95 °C                 |                       |                       |                       |
| Power card ambient trip                                      | 68 °C                 |                       |                       |                       |

\* High overload = 160% torque during 60 sec, Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 sec.

Table 7.1

| Mains Supply 6 x 380 - 500V AC  |                   |            |            |                     |            |            |
|---|-------------------|------------|------------|---------------------|------------|------------|
|   | P500              | P560       | P630       | P710                | P800       | P1000      |
| Typical Shaft output at 400 V [kW]  | 500               | 560        | 630        | 710                 | 800        | 1000       |
| Typical Shaft output at 460 V [HP]  | 650               | 750        | 900        | 1000                | 1200       | 1350       |
| Typical Shaft output at 500 V [kW]  | 560               | 630        | 710        | 800                 | 1000       | 1100       |
| Enclosure IP21, 54 without/ with options cabinet                              | F10/F11           | F10/F11    | F10/F11    | F10/F11             | F12/F13    | F12/F13    |
| Output current  |                   |            |            |                     |            |            |
| Continuous (at 400 V) [A]   | 880               | 990        | 1120       | 1260                | 1460       | 1720       |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 400 V) [A]                                 | 968               | 1089       | 1232       | 1386                | 1606       | 1892       |
| Continuous (at 460/ 500 V) [A]  | 780               | 890        | 1050       | 1160                | 1380       | 1530       |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 460/ 500 V) [A]                            | 858               | 979        | 1155       | 1276                | 1518       | 1683       |
| Continuous KVA (at 400 V) [KVA]   | 610               | 686        | 776        | 873                 | 1012       | 1192       |
| Continuous KVA (at 460 V) [KVA]   | 621               | 709        | 837        | 924                 | 1100       | 1219       |
| Continuous KVA (at 500 V) [KVA]   | 675               | 771        | 909        | 1005                | 1195       | 1325       |
| Max. input current  |                   |            |            |                     |            |            |
| Continuous (at 400 V ) [A]  | 857               | 964        | 1090       | 1227                | 1422       | 1675       |
| Continuous (at 460/ 500 V) [A]  | 759               | 867        | 1022       | 1129                | 1344       | 1490       |
| Max. cable size,motor [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )]                   | 8x150 (8x300 mcm) |            |            | 12x150 (12x300 mcm) |            |            |
| Max. cable size,mains [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )]                   | 6x120 (6x250 mcm) |            |            |                     |            |            |
| Max. cable size, brake [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )]                  | 4x185 (4x350 mcm) |            |            | 6x185 (6x350 mcm)   |            |            |
| Max. external mains fuses [A] <sup>1)</sup>                                   | 900               |            |            | 1500                |            |            |
| Estimated power loss at 400 V [W] <sup>4)</sup>                               | 10647             | 12338      | 13201      | 15436               | 18084      | 20358      |
| Estimated power loss at 460 V [W]   | 9414              | 11006      | 12353      | 14041               | 17137      | 17752      |
| F9/F11/F13 max. added losses A1 RFI, CB or Disconnect, & contactor F9/F11/F13 | 963               | 1054       | 1093       | 1230                | 2280       | 2541       |
| Max. panel options losses   | 400               |            |            |                     |            |            |
| Weight, enclosure IP21, IP54 [kg]   | 1004/ 1299        | 1004/ 1299 | 1004/ 1299 | 1004/ 1299          | 1246/ 1541 | 1246/ 1541 |
| Weight rectifier module [kg]  | 102               | 102        | 102        | 102                 | 136        | 136        |
| Weight inverter module [kg]   | 102               | 102        | 102        | 136                 | 102        | 102        |
| Efficiency <sup>4)</sup>  | 0.98              |            |            |                     |            |            |
| Output frequency  | 0-600Hz           |            |            |                     |            |            |
| Heatsink overtemp. trip   | 95 °C             |            |            |                     |            |            |
| Power card ambient trip   | 68 °C             |            |            |                     |            |            |

\* High overload = 160% torque during 60 sec., Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 sec.

Table 7.2

7

| Mains Supply 3 x 525- 690V AC                      |                       |                       |                       |                       |
|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
|  | P450                  | P500                  | P560                  | P630                  |
| Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]                 | 355                   | 400                   | 450                   | 500                   |
| Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]                 | 450                   | 500                   | 600                   | 650                   |
| Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]                 | 450                   | 500                   | 560                   | 630                   |
| Enclosure IP21                                     | F8/F9                 | F8/F9                 | F8/F9                 | F8/F9                 |
| Enclosure IP54                                     | F8/F9                 | F8/F9                 | F8/F9                 | F8/F9                 |
| Output current                                     |                       |                       |                       |                       |
| Continuous (at 550 V) [A]                          | 470                   | 523                   | 596                   | 630                   |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V) [A]      | 517                   | 575                   | 656                   | 693                   |
| Continuous (at 575/ 690 V) [A]                     | 450                   | 500                   | 570                   | 630                   |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/ 690 V) [A] | 495                   | 550                   | 627                   | 693                   |
| Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]                    | 448                   | 498                   | 568                   | 600                   |
| Continuous KVA (at 575 V) [KVA]                    | 448                   | 498                   | 568                   | 627                   |
| Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]                    | 538                   | 598                   | 681                   | 753                   |
| Max. input current                                 |                       |                       |                       |                       |
| Continuous (at 550 V ) [A]                         | 453                   | 504                   | 574                   | 607                   |
| Continuous (at 575 V) [A]                          | 434                   | 482                   | 549                   | 607                   |
| Continuous (at 690 V) [A]                          | 434                   | 482                   | 549                   | 607                   |
| Max. cable size, mains [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG)]     | 4x85 (3/0)            |                       |                       |                       |
| Max. cable size, motor [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG)]     | 4 x 250 (500 mcm)     |                       |                       |                       |
| Max. cable size, brake [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG)]     | 2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm) | 2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm) | 2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm) | 2 x 185 (2 x 350 mcm) |
| Max. external mains fuses [A] <sup>1</sup>         | 630                   |                       |                       |                       |
| Estimated power loss at 600 V [W] <sup>4)</sup>    | 6132                  | 6903                  | 8343                  | 9244                  |
| Estimated power loss at 690 V [W] <sup>4)</sup>    | 6449                  | 7249                  | 8727                  | 9673                  |
| Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]                 | 440/656               |                       |                       |                       |
| Efficiency <sup>4)</sup>                           | 0.98                  |                       |                       |                       |
| Output frequency                                   | 0 - 500 Hz            |                       |                       |                       |
| Heatsink overtemp. trip                            | 85 °C                 |                       |                       |                       |
| Power card ambient trip                            | 68 °C                 |                       |                       |                       |

\* High overload = 160% torque during 60 sec, Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 sec.

Table 7.3



| Mains Supply 3 x 525- 690V AC                                |                      |            |            |
|--|----------------------|------------|------------|
|  | P710                 | P800       | P900       |
| Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]                           | 560                  | 670        | 750        |
| Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]                           | 750                  | 950        | 1050       |
| Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]                           | 710                  | 800        | 900        |
| Enclosure IP21, 54 without/ with options cabinet             | F10/F11              | F10/F11    | F10/F11    |
| Output current   |                      |            |            |
| Continuous (at 550 V) [A]                                    | 763                  | 889        | 988        |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V) [A]                | 839                  | 978        | 1087       |
| Continuous (at 575/ 690 V) [A]                               | 730                  | 850        | 945        |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/ 690 V) [A]           | 803                  | 935        | 1040       |
| Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]                              | 727                  | 847        | 941        |
| Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]                              | 872                  | 1016       | 1129       |
| Max. input current   |                      |            |            |
| Continuous (at 550 V ) [A]                                   | 743                  | 866        | 962        |
| Continuous (at 575 V) [A]                                    | 711                  | 828        | 920        |
| Continuous (at 690 V) [A]                                    | 711                  | 828        | 920        |
| Max. cable size, motor [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )] | 8x150<br>(8x300 mcm) |            |            |
| Max. cable size,mains [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )]  | 6x120<br>(6x250 mcm) |            |            |
| Max. cable size, brake [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )] | 4x185<br>(4x350 mcm) |            |            |
| Max. external mains fuses [A] <sup>1</sup>                   | 900                  |            |            |
| Estimated power loss at 600 V [W] <sup>4)</sup>              | 10771                | 12272      | 13835      |
| Estimated power loss at 690V [W] <sup>4)</sup>               | 11315                | 12903      | 14533      |
| F3/F4 Max added losses CB or Disconnect & Contactor          | 427                  | 532        | 615        |
| Max panel options losses                                     | 400                  |            |            |
| Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]                           | 1004/ 1299           | 1004/ 1299 | 1004/ 1299 |
| Weight, Rectifier Module [kg]                                | 102                  | 102        | 102        |
| Weight, Inverter Module [kg]                                 | 102                  | 102        | 136        |
| Efficiency <sup>4)</sup>                                     | 0.98                 |            |            |
| Output frequency   | 0-500 Hz             |            |            |
| Heatsink overtemp. trip                                      | 85 °C                |            |            |
| Power card ambient trip                                      | 68 °C                |            |            |

\* High overload = 160% torque during 60 sec., Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 sec.

7

Table 7.4

| Mains Supply 3 x 525- 690V AC  |                        |            |           |
|--|------------------------|------------|-----------|
|  | P1M0                   | P1M2       | P1M4      |
| Typical Shaft output at 550 V [kW]   | 850                    | 1000       | 1100      |
| Typical Shaft output at 575 V [HP]   | 1150                   | 1350       | 1550      |
| Typical Shaft output at 690 V [kW]   | 1000                   | 1200       | 1400      |
| Enclosure IP21, 54 without/ with options cabinet   | F12/F13                | F12/F13    | F12/F13   |
| Output current   |                        |            |           |
| Continuous (at 550 V) [A]  | 1108                   | 1317       | 1479      |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 550 V) [A]  | 1219                   | 1449       | 1627      |
| Continuous (at 575/ 690 V) [A]   | 1060                   | 1260       | 1415      |
| Intermittent (60 sec overload) (at 575/ 690 V) [A]   | 1166                   | 1386       | 1557      |
| Continuous KVA (at 550 V) [KVA]  | 1056                   | 1255       | 1409      |
| Continuous KVA (at 690 V) [KVA]  | 1267                   | 1506       | 1691      |
| Max. input current   |                        |            |           |
| Continuous (at 550 V ) [A]   | 1079                   | 1282       | 1440      |
| Continuous (at 575 V) [A]  | 1032                   | 1227       | 1378      |
| Continuous (at 690 V) [A]  | 1032                   | 1227       | 1378      |
| Max. cable size, motor [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )]                               | 12x150<br>(12x300 mcm) |            |           |
| Max. cable size,mains F12 [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )]                            | 8x240<br>(8x500 mcm)   |            |           |
| Max. cable size,mains F13 [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )]                            | 8x400<br>(8x900 mcm)   |            |           |
| Max. cable size, brake [mm <sup>2</sup> (AWG <sup>2</sup> )]                               | 6x185<br>(6x350 mcm)   |            |           |
| Max. external mains fuses [A] <sup>1</sup>   | 1600                   | 2000       | 2500      |
| Estimated power loss at 600 V [W] <sup>4)</sup>  | 15592                  | 18281      | 20825     |
| Estimated power loss at 690V [W] <sup>4)</sup>   | 16375                  | 19207      | 21857     |
| F3/F4 Max added losses CB or Disconnect & Contactor  | 665                    | 863        | 1044      |
| Max panel options losses   | 400                    |            |           |
| Weight, enclosure IP21, IP 54 [kg]   | 1246/ 1541             | 1246/ 1541 | 1280/1575 |
| Weight, Rectifier Module [kg]  | 136                    | 136        | 136       |
| Weight, Inverter Module [kg]   | 102                    | 102        | 136       |
| Efficiency <sup>4)</sup>   | 0.98                   |            |           |
| Output frequency   | 0-500 Hz               |            |           |
| Heatsink overtemp. trip  | 85 °C                  |            |           |
| Power card ambient trip  | 68 °C                  |            |           |
| * High overload = 160% torque during 60 sec., Normal overload = 110% torque during 60 sec. |                        |            |           |

Table 7.5

1) For type of fuse see section *Fuses*.

2) American Wire Gauge.

3) Measured using 5 m screened motor cables at rated load and rated frequency.

4) The typical power loss is at nominal load conditions and expected to be within +/-15% (tolerance relates to variety in voltage and cable conditions).

Values are based on a typical motor efficiency (eff2/eff3 border line). Motors with lower efficiency will also add to the power loss in the frequency converter and opposite.

If the switching frequency is increased compared to the default setting, the power losses may rise significantly.

LCP and typical control card power consumptions are included. Further options and customer load may add up to 30W to the losses. (Though typical only 4W extra for a fully loaded control card, or options for slot A or slot B, each).

Although measurements are made with state of the art equipment, some measurement inaccuracy must be allowed for (+/-5%).

## 8 Warnings and Alarms

A warning or an alarm is signalled by the relevant LED on the front of the frequency converter and indicated by a code on the display.

A warning remains active until its cause is no longer present. Under certain circumstances operation of the motor may still be continued. Warning messages may be critical, but are not necessarily so.

If an alarm occurs, the frequency converter trips. Alarms must be reset to restart operation once their cause has been rectified.

### This may be done in 4 ways:

1. Pressing [Reset] on the LCP
2. Via a digital input with the "Reset" function
3. Via serial communication/optional fieldbus
4. By resetting automatically using the [Auto Reset] function (default)

### NOTICE

After a manual reset pressing [Reset], the [Auto On] or [Hand On] must be pressed to restart the motor.

If an alarm cannot be reset, the reason may be that its cause has not been rectified, or the alarm is trip-locked (see also *Table 8.1*).

### CAUTION

Alarms that are trip-locked offer additional protection, means that the mains supply must be switched off before the alarm can be reset. After being switched back on, the frequency converter is no longer blocked and may be reset as described above once the cause has been rectified.

Alarms that are not trip-locked can also be reset using the automatic reset function in *14-20 Reset Mode* (Warning: automatic wake-up is possible!)

If a warning and alarm is marked against a code in the table on the following page, this means that either a warning occurs before an alarm, or it can be specified whether it is a warning or an alarm that is to be displayed for a given fault.

This is possible, for instance, in *parameter 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection*. After an alarm or trip, the motor carries on coasting, and the alarm and warning flash on the frequency converter. Once the problem has been rectified, only the alarm continues flashing.

| No. | Description                       | Warning | Alarm/<br>Trip | Alarm/Trip Lock | Parameter Reference |
|-----|-----------------------------------|---------|----------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1   | 10 Volts low                      | X       |                |                 |                     |
| 2   | Live zero error                   | (X)     | (X)            |                 | 6-01                |
| 3   | No motor                          | (X)     |                |                 | 1-80                |
| 4   | Mains phase loss                  | (X)     | (X)            | (X)             | 14-12               |
| 5   | DC link voltage high              | X       |                |                 |                     |
| 6   | DC link voltage low               | X       |                |                 |                     |
| 7   | DC over voltage                   | X       | X              |                 |                     |
| 8   | DC under voltage                  | X       | X              |                 |                     |
| 9   | Inverter overloaded               | X       | X              |                 |                     |
| 10  | Motor ETR over temperature        | (X)     | (X)            |                 | 1-90                |
| 11  | Motor thermistor over temperature | (X)     | (X)            |                 | 1-90                |
| 12  | Torque limit                      | X       | X              |                 |                     |
| 13  | Over Current                      | X       | X              | X               |                     |
| 14  | Earth fault                       | X       | X              | X               |                     |
| 15  | Hardware mismatch                 |         | X              | X               |                     |
| 16  | Short Circuit                     |         | X              | X               |                     |
| 17  | Control word timeout              | (X)     | (X)            |                 | 8-04                |
| 23  | Internal Fan Fault                | X       |                |                 |                     |
| 24  | External Fan Fault                | X       |                |                 | 14-53               |
| 25  | Brake resistor short-circuited    | X       |                |                 |                     |

| No. | Description                            | Warning | Alarm/<br>Trip  | Alarm/Trip Lock | Parameter Reference |
|-----|--|---------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| 26  | Brake resistor power limit             | (X)     | (X)             |                 | 2-13                |
| 27  | Brake chopper short-circuited          | X       | X               |                 |                     |
| 28  | Brake check                            | (X)     | (X)             |                 | 2-15                |
| 29  | Drive over temperature                 | X       | X               | X               |                     |
| 30  | Motor phase U missing                  | (X)     | (X)             | (X)             | 4-58                |
| 31  | Motor phase V missing                  | (X)     | (X)             | (X)             | 4-58                |
| 32  | Motor phase W missing                  | (X)     | (X)             | (X)             | 4-58                |
| 33  | Inrush fault                           |         | X               | X               |                     |
| 34  | Fieldbus communication fault           | X       | X               |                 |                     |
| 35  | Out of frequency range                 | X       | X               |                 |                     |
| 36  | Mains failure                          | X       | X               |                 |                     |
| 37  | Phase Imbalance                        | X       | X               |                 |                     |
| 38  | Internal fault                         |         | X               | X               |                     |
| 39  | Heat sink sensor                       |         | X               | X               |                     |
| 40  | Overload of Digital Output Terminal 27 | (X)     |                 |                 | 5-00, 5-01          |
| 41  | Overload of Digital Output Terminal 29 | (X)     |                 |                 | 5-00, 5-02          |
| 42  | Overload of Digital Output On X30/6    | (X)     |                 |                 | 5-32                |
| 42  | Overload of Digital Output On X30/7    | (X)     |                 |                 | 5-33                |
| 46  | Pwr. card supply                       |         | X               | X               |                     |
| 47  | 24 V supply low                        | X       | X               | X               |                     |
| 48  | 1.8 V supply low                       |         | X               | X               |                     |
| 49  | Speed limit                            | X       | (X)             |                 | 1-86                |
| 50  | AMA calibration failed                 |         | X               |                 |                     |
| 51  | AMA check $U_{nom}$ and $I_{nom}$      |         | X               |                 |                     |
| 52  | AMA low $I_{nom}$                      |         | X               |                 |                     |
| 53  | AMA motor too big                      |         | X               |                 |                     |
| 54  | AMA motor too small                    |         | X               |                 |                     |
| 55  | AMA Parameter out of range             |         | X               |                 |                     |
| 56  | AMA interrupted by user                |         | X               |                 |                     |
| 57  | AMA timeout                            |         | X               |                 |                     |
| 58  | AMA internal fault                     | X       | X               |                 |                     |
| 59  | Current limit                          | X       |                 |                 |                     |
| 60  | External Interlock                     | X       |                 |                 |                     |
| 62  | Output Frequency at Maximum Limit      | X       |                 |                 |                     |
| 64  | Voltage Limit                          | X       |                 |                 |                     |
| 65  | Control Board Over-temperature         | X       | X               | X               |                     |
| 66  | Heat sink Temperature Low              | X       |                 |                 |                     |
| 67  | Option Configuration has Changed       |         | X               |                 |                     |
| 69  | Pwr. Card Temp                         |         | X               | X               |                     |
| 70  | Illegal FC configuration               |         |                 | X               |                     |
| 71  | PTC 1 Safe Stop                        | X       | X <sup>1)</sup> |                 |                     |
| 72  | Dangerous Failure                      |         |                 | X <sup>1)</sup> |                     |
| 73  | Safe Stop Auto Restart                 |         |                 |                 |                     |
| 76  | Power Unit Setup                       | X       |                 |                 |                     |
| 79  | Illegal PS config                      |         | X               | X               |                     |
| 80  | Drive Initialized to Default Value     |         | X               |                 |                     |
| 91  | Analog input 54 wrong settings         |         |                 | X               |                     |
| 92  | NoFlow                                 | X       | X               |                 | 22-2*               |
| 93  | Dry Pump                               | X       | X               |                 | 22-2*               |
| 94  | End of Curve                           | X       | X               |                 | 22-5*               |
| 95  | Broken Belt                            | X       | X               |                 | 22-6*               |
| 96  | Start Delayed                          | X       |                 |                 | 22-7*               |

| No. | Description            | Warning | Alarm/<br>Trip | Alarm/Trip Lock | Parameter Reference |
|-----|------------------------|---------|----------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| 97  | Stop Delayed           | X       |                |                 | 22-7*               |
| 98  | Clock Fault            | X       |                |                 | 0-7*                |
| 201 | Fire M was Active      |         |                |                 |                     |
| 202 | Fire M Limits Exceeded |         |                |                 |                     |
| 203 | Missing Motor          |         |                |                 |                     |
| 204 | Locked Rotor           |         |                |                 |                     |
| 243 | Brake IGBT             | X       | X              |                 |                     |
| 244 | Heat sink temp         | X       | X              | X               |                     |
| 245 | Heat sink sensor       |         | X              | X               |                     |
| 246 | Pwr.card supply        |         | X              | X               |                     |
| 247 | Pwr.card temp          |         | X              | X               |                     |
| 248 | Illegal PS config      |         | X              | X               |                     |
| 250 | New spare parts        |         |                | X               |                     |
| 251 | New Type Code          |         | X              | X               |                     |

**Table 8.1 Alarm/Warning Code List**

(X) *Dependent on parameter*

1) *Can not be Auto reset via 14-20 Reset Mode*

8

A trip is the action when an alarm has appeared. The trip will coast the motor and can be reset by pressing [Reset] or make a reset by a digital input (parameter group 5-1\* *Digital Inputs* [1]). The original event that caused an alarm cannot damage the frequency converter or cause dangerous conditions. A trip lock is an action when an

alarm occurs, which may cause damage to frequency converter or connected parts. A Trip Lock situation can only be reset by a power cycling.

|             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| Warning     | yellow         |
| Alarm       | flashing red   |
| Trip locked | yellow and red |

**Table 8.2 LED Indication**

| Alarm Word and Extended Status Word |          |            |                   |                  |                      |
|-------------------------------------|----------|------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| Bit                                 | Hex      | Dec        | Alarm Word        | Warning Word     | Extended Status Word |
| 0                                   | 00000001 | 1          | Brake Check       | Brake Check      | Ramping              |
| 1                                   | 00000002 | 2          | Pwr. Card Temp    | Pwr. Card Temp   | AMA Running          |
| 2                                   | 00000004 | 4          | Earth Fault       | Earth Fault      | Start CW/CCW         |
| 3                                   | 00000008 | 8          | Ctrl.Card Temp    | Ctrl.Card Temp   | Slow Down            |
| 4                                   | 00000010 | 16         | Ctrl. Word TO     | Ctrl. Word TO    | Catch Up             |
| 5                                   | 00000020 | 32         | Over Current      | Over Current     | Feedback High        |
| 6                                   | 00000040 | 64         | Torque Limit      | Torque Limit     | Feedback Low         |
| 7                                   | 00000080 | 128        | Motor Th Over     | Motor Th Over    | Output Current High  |
| 8                                   | 00000100 | 256        | Motor ETR Over    | Motor ETR Over   | Output Current Low   |
| 9                                   | 00000200 | 512        | Inverter Overld.  | Inverter Overld. | Output Freq High     |
| 10                                  | 00000400 | 1024       | DC under Volt     | DC under Volt    | Output Freq Low      |
| 11                                  | 00000800 | 2048       | DC over Volt      | DC over Volt     | Brake Check OK       |
| 12                                  | 00001000 | 4096       | Short Circuit     | DC Voltage Low   | Braking Max          |
| 13                                  | 00002000 | 8192       | Inrush Fault      | DC Voltage High  | Braking              |
| 14                                  | 00004000 | 16384      | Mains ph. Loss    | Mains ph. Loss   | Out of Speed Range   |
| 15                                  | 00008000 | 32768      | AMA Not OK        | No Motor         | OVC Active           |
| 16                                  | 00010000 | 65536      | Live Zero Error   | Live Zero Error  |                      |
| 17                                  | 00020000 | 131072     | Internal Fault    | 10V Low          |                      |
| 18                                  | 00040000 | 262144     | Brake Overload    | Brake Overload   |                      |
| 19                                  | 00080000 | 524288     | U phase Loss      | Brake Resistor   |                      |
| 20                                  | 00100000 | 1048576    | V phase Loss      | Brake IGBT       |                      |
| 21                                  | 00200000 | 2097152    | W phase Loss      | Speed Limit      |                      |
| 22                                  | 00400000 | 4194304    | Fieldbus Fault    | Fieldbus Fault   |                      |
| 23                                  | 00800000 | 8388608    | 24V Supply Low    | 24V Supply Low   |                      |
| 24                                  | 01000000 | 16777216   | Mains Failure     | Mains Failure    |                      |
| 25                                  | 02000000 | 33554432   | 1.8V Supply Low   | Current Limit    |                      |
| 26                                  | 04000000 | 67108864   | Brake Resistor    | Low Temp         |                      |
| 27                                  | 08000000 | 134217728  | Brake IGBT        | Voltage Limit    |                      |
| 28                                  | 10000000 | 268435456  | Option Change     | Unused           |                      |
| 29                                  | 20000000 | 536870912  | Drive Initialized | Unused           |                      |
| 30                                  | 40000000 | 1073741824 | Safe Stop         | Unused           |                      |

**Table 8.3 Description of Alarm Word, Warning Word and Extended Status Word**

The alarm words, warning words and extended status words can be read out via serial bus or optional fieldbus for diagnosis. See also *16-90 Alarm Word*, *16-92 Warning Word* and *16-94 Ext. Status Word*.

**WARNING 1, 10 Volts low**

The control card voltage is <10 V from terminal 50. Remove some of the load from terminal 50, as the 10 V supply is overloaded. Maximum 15 mA or minimum 590 Ω.

A short-circuit in a connected potentiometer or improper wiring of the potentiometer can cause this condition.

**Troubleshooting**

- Remove the wiring from terminal 50. If the warning clears, the problem is with the wiring. If the warning does not clear, replace the control card.

**WARNING/ALARM 2, Live zero error**

This warning or alarm only appears if programmed in *parameter 6-01 Live Zero Timeout Function*. The signal on one of the analog inputs is less than 50% of the minimum value programmed for that input. Broken wiring or a faulty device sending the signal can cause this condition.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the connections on all the analog input terminals.
  - Control card terminals 53 and 54 for signals, terminal 55 common.
  - MCB 101 terminals 11 and 12 for signals, terminal 10 common.
  - MCB 109 terminals 1, 3, 5 for signals, terminals 2, 4, 6 common.
- Check that the frequency converter programming and switch settings match the analog signal type.
- Perform an input terminal signal test.

**WARNING/ALARM 3, No motor**

No motor has been connected to the output of the frequency converter.

**WARNING/ALARM 4, Mains phase loss**

A phase is missing on the supply side, or the mains voltage imbalance is too high. This message also appears for a fault in the input rectifier on the frequency converter. Options are programmed in *14-12 Function at Mains Imbalance*.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the supply voltage and supply currents to the frequency converter.

**WARNING 5, DC link voltage high**

The intermediate circuit voltage (DC) is higher than the high-voltage warning limit. The limit is dependent on the frequency converter voltage rating. The unit is still active.

**WARNING 6, DC link voltage low**

The intermediate circuit voltage (DC) is lower than the low-voltage warning limit. The limit is dependent on the frequency converter voltage rating. The unit is still active.

**WARNING/ALARM 7, DC overvoltage**

If the intermediate circuit voltage exceeds the limit, the frequency converter trips after a time.

**Troubleshooting**

- Connect a brake resistor
- Extend the ramp time.
- Change the ramp type.
- Activate the functions in *parameter 2-10 Brake Function*.
- Increase *14-26 Trip Delay at Inverter Fault*
- If the alarm/warning occurs during a power sag, use kinetic back-up (*14-10 Mains Failure*).

**WARNING/ALARM 8, DC under voltage**

If the DC-link voltage drops below the undervoltage limit, the frequency converter checks if a 24 V DC backup supply is connected. If no 24 V DC backup supply is connected, the frequency converter trips after a fixed time delay. The time delay varies with unit size.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check that the supply voltage matches the frequency converter voltage.
- Perform an input voltage test.
- Perform a soft charge circuit test.

**WARNING/ALARM 9, Inverter overload**

The frequency converter is about to cut out because of an overload. The counter for electronic, thermal inverter protection issues a warning at 98% and trips at 100%, while giving an alarm. The frequency converter cannot be reset until the counter is below 90%. The fault is that the frequency converter has run with more than 100% overload for too long.

**Troubleshooting**

- Compare the output current shown on the LCP with the frequency converter rated current.
- Compare the output current shown on the LCP with the measured motor current.
- Display the thermal drive load on the LCP and monitor the value. When running above the frequency converter continuous current rating, the counter increases. When running below the frequency converter continuous current rating, the counter decreases.

**WARNING/ALARM 10, Motor overload temperature**

According to the electronic thermal protection (ETR), the motor is too hot. Select whether the frequency converter issues a warning or an alarm when the counter reaches 100% in *parameter 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection*. The fault occurs when the motor runs with more than 100% overload for too long.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check for motor overheating.
- Check if the motor is mechanically overloaded.
- Check that the motor current set in *1-24 Motor Current* is correct.



- Ensure that the motor data in *parameters 1-20 to 1-25* are set correctly.
- If an external fan is in use, check that it is selected in *1-91 Motor External Fan*.
- Running AMA in *parameter 1-29 Automatic Motor Adaptation (AMA)* tunes the frequency converter to the motor more accurately and reduces thermal loading.

**WARNING/ALARM 11, Motor thermistor overtemp**

The thermistor may be disconnected. Select whether the frequency converter issues a warning or an alarm in *parameter 1-90 Motor Thermal Protection*.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check for motor overheating.
- Check if the motor is mechanically overloaded.
- Check that the thermistor is connected correctly between either terminal 53 or 54 (analog voltage input) and terminal 50 (+10 V supply). Also check that the terminal switch for 53 or 54 is set for voltage. Check that *1-93 Thermistor Resource* is set to terminal 53 or 54.
- When using digital inputs 18 or 19, check that the thermistor is connected correctly between either terminal 18 or 19 (digital input PNP only) and terminal 50.
- If a KTY sensor is used, check for correct connection between terminals 54 and 55
- If using a thermal switch or thermistor, check that the programming of *1-93 Thermistor Resource* matches sensor wiring.
- If using a KTY Sensor, check the programming of *1-95 KTY Sensor Type*, *1-96 KTY Thermistor Resource* and *1-97 KTY Threshold level* match sensor wiring.

**WARNING/ALARM 12, Torque limit**

The torque has exceeded the value in *4-16 Torque Limit Motor Mode* or the value in *4-17 Torque Limit Generator Mode*. *14-25 Trip Delay at Torque Limit* can change this warning from a warning-only condition to a warning followed by an alarm.

**Troubleshooting**

- If the motor torque limit is exceeded during ramp up, extend the ramp-up time.
- If the generator torque limit is exceeded during ramp-down, extend the ramp down time.
- If torque limit occurs while running, increase the torque limit. Make sure that the system can operate safely at a higher torque.
- Check the application for excessive current draw on the motor.

**WARNING/ALARM 13, Over current**

The inverter peak current limit (approximately 200% of the rated current) is exceeded. The warning lasts approximately 1.5 s, then the frequency converter trips and issues an alarm. Shock loading or quick acceleration with high inertia loads can cause this fault. If the acceleration during ramp-up is quick, the fault can also appear after kinetic back-up.

If extended mechanical brake control is selected, a trip can be reset externally.

**Troubleshooting**

- Remove the power and check if the motor shaft can be turned.
- Check that the motor size matches the frequency converter.
- Check that the motor data is correct in *parameters 1-20 to 1-25*.

**ALARM 14, Earth (ground) fault**

There is current from the output phases to ground, either in the cable between the frequency converter and the motor, or in the motor itself.

**Troubleshooting**

- Remove the power to the frequency converter and repair the ground fault.
- Check for ground faults in the motor by measuring the resistance to the ground of the motor cables and the motor with a megohmmeter.
- Perform a current sensor test.

**ALARM 15, Hardware mismatch**

A fitted option is not operational with the present control board hardware or software.

Record the value of the following parameters and contact Danfoss:

- *15-40 FC Type*
- *15-41 Power Section*
- *15-42 Voltage*
- *15-43 Software Version*
- *15-45 Actual Typecode String*
- *15-49 SW ID Control Card*
- *15-50 SW ID Power Card*
- *15-60 Option Mounted*
- *15-61 Option SW Version* (for each option slot)

**ALARM 16, Short circuit**

There is short-circuiting in the motor or motor wiring.

**Troubleshooting**

- Remove the power to the frequency converter and repair the short-circuit.

**WARNING/ALARM 17, Control word timeout**

There is no communication with the frequency converter.

The warning is only active when *8-04 Control Word Timeout Function* is not set to *[0] Off*.

If *8-04 Control Word Timeout Function* is set to *[2] Stop* and *[26] Trip*, a warning appears and the frequency converter ramps down until it trips and then displays an alarm.

#### Troubleshooting:

- Check the connections on the serial communication cable.
- Increase *8-03 Control Word Timeout Time*
- Check the operation of the communication equipment.
- Verify a proper installation based on EMC requirements.

#### ALARM 18, Start failed

The speed has not exceeded *1-77 Compressor Start Max Speed [RPM]* during start within the allowed time. (set in *1-79 Compressor Start Max Time to Trip*). This may be caused by a blocked motor.

#### WARNING 23, Internal fan fault

The fan warning function is an extra protective function that checks if the fan is running/mounted. The fan warning can be disabled in *14-53 Fan Monitor ([0] Disabled)*.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the fan resistance.
- Check the soft charge fuses.

#### WARNING 24, External fan fault

The fan warning function is an extra protective function that checks if the fan is running/mounted. The fan warning can be disabled in *14-53 Fan Monitor ([0] Disabled)*.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the fan resistance.
- Check the soft charge fuses.

#### WARNING 25, Brake resistor short circuit

The brake resistor is monitored during operation. If a short-circuit occurs, the brake function is disabled and the warning appears. The frequency converter is still operational, but without the brake function.

#### Troubleshooting

- Remove the power to the frequency converter and replace the brake resistor (see *2-15 Brake Check*).

#### WARNING/ALARM 26, Brake resistor power limit

The power transmitted to the brake resistor is calculated as a mean value over the last 120 s of run time. The calculation is based on the intermediate circuit voltage and the brake resistance value set in *2-16 AC brake Max. Current*. The warning is active when the dissipated braking is >90% of the brake resistance power. If *[2] Trip* is selected in *2-13 Brake Power Monitoring*, the frequency converter trips when the dissipated braking power reaches 100%.

## WARNING

If the brake transistor is short-circuited, there is a risk of substantial power being transmitted to the brake resistor.

#### WARNING/ALARM 27, Brake chopper fault

The brake transistor is monitored during operation. If a short-circuit occurs, the brake function is disabled and a warning is issued. The frequency converter is still operational, but since the brake transistor has short-circuited, substantial power is transmitted to the brake resistor, even if it is inactive. Remove the power to the frequency converter and remove the brake resistor.

This alarm/warning could also occur if the brake resistor overheats. Terminals 104 and 106 are available as brake resistors Klixon inputs.

#### WARNING/ALARM 28, Brake check failed

The brake resistor is not connected or not working. Check *2-15 Brake Check*.

#### ALARM 29, Heat Sink temp

The maximum temperature of the heat sink has been exceeded. The temperature fault resets when the temperature falls below a defined heat sink temperature. The trip and reset points vary based on the frequency converter power size.

#### Troubleshooting

Check for the following conditions.

- Ambient temperature too high.
- Motor cables too long.
- Incorrect airflow clearance above and below the frequency converter.
- Blocked airflow around the frequency converter.
- Damaged heat sink fan.
- Dirty heat sink.

For D, E, and F enclosures, this alarm is based on the temperature measured by the heat sink sensor mounted inside the IGBT modules. For the F enclosures, the thermal sensor in the rectifier module can also cause this alarm.

#### Troubleshooting

- Check the fan resistance.
- Check the soft charge fuses.
- Check the IGBT thermal sensor.

#### ALARM 30, Motor phase U missing

Motor phase U between the frequency converter and the motor is missing.

#### Troubleshooting

- Remove the power from the frequency converter and check motor phase U.

**ALARM 31, Motor phase V missing**

Motor phase V between the frequency converter and the motor is missing.

**Troubleshooting**

- Remove the power from the frequency converter and check motor phase V.

**ALARM 32, Motor phase W missing**

Motor phase W between the frequency converter and the motor is missing.

**Troubleshooting**

- Remove the power from the frequency converter and check motor phase W.

**ALARM 33, Inrush fault**

Too many power-ups have occurred within a short time period.

**Troubleshooting**

- Let the unit cool to operating temperature.

**WARNING/ALARM 34, Fieldbus communication fault**

The fieldbus on the communication option card is not working.

**WARNING/ALARM 35, Option fault**

This warning is active if the output frequency has reached the high limit (set in 4-53 *Warning Speed High*) or low limit (set in 4-52 *Warning Speed Low*). In *Process Control, Closed Loop (1-00 Configuration Mode)* this warning is displayed.

**WARNING/ALARM 36, Mains failure**

This warning/alarm is only active if the supply voltage to the frequency converter is lost and 14-10 *Mains Failure* is not set to [0] *No Function*. Check the fuses to the frequency converter and mains supply to the unit.

**ALARM 38, Internal fault**

When an internal fault occurs, a code number defined in Table 8.4 is displayed.

**Troubleshooting**

- Cycle the power.
- Check that the option is properly installed.
- Check for loose or missing wiring.

It may be necessary to contact Danfoss Service or the supplier. Note the code number for further troubleshooting directions.

| Number  | Text   |
|---------|--|
| 0       | The serial port cannot be initialised. Contact your Danfoss supplier or Danfoss Service. |
| 256–258 | The power EEPROM data is defective or too old.   |
| 512     | The control board EEPROM data is defective or too old.                                   |
| 513     | Communication time-out reading EEPROM data   |
| 514     | Communication time-out reading EEPROM data   |
| 515     | Application-oriented control cannot recognise the EEPROM data.                           |

| Number    | Text  |
|-----------|---|
| 516       | Cannot write to the EEPROM because a write command is in progress.  |
| 517       | The write command is under time-out.  |
| 518       | Failure in the EEPROM.  |
| 519       | Missing or invalid barcode data in EEPROM.  |
| 783       | Parameter value outside of minimum/maximum limits.  |
| 1024–1279 | A CAN telegram could not be sent.   |
| 1281      | Digital signal processor flash time-out.  |
| 1282      | Power micro software version mismatch.  |
| 1283      | Power EEPROM data version mismatch.   |
| 1284      | Cannot read digital signal processor software version.  |
| 1299      | The option software in slot A is too old.   |
| 1300      | The option software in slot B is too old.   |
| 1301      | The option software in slot C0 is too old.  |
| 1302      | The option software in slot C1 is too old.  |
| 1315      | The option software in slot A is not supported (not allowed).   |
| 1316      | The option software in slot B is not supported (not allowed).   |
| 1317      | The option software in slot C0 is not supported (not allowed).  |
| 1318      | The option software in slot C1 is not supported (not allowed).  |
| 1379      | Option A did not respond when calculating the platform version  |
| 1380      | Option B did not respond when calculating the platform version.   |
| 1381      | Option C0 did not respond when calculating the platform version.  |
| 1382      | Option C1 did not respond when calculating the platform version.  |
| 1536      | An exception in the application-oriented control is registered. The debug information is written on the LCP.  |
| 1792      | DSP Watch Dog is active. Debugging of power part data, motor-oriented control data not transferred correctly. |
| 2049      | Power data restarted.   |
| 2064–2072 | H081x: Option in slot x has restarted.  |
| 2080–2088 | H082x: Option in slot x has issued a power-up wait.   |
| 2096–2104 | H983x: Option in slot x has issued a legal power-up wait.   |
| 2304      | Could not read any data from the power EEPROM.  |
| 2305      | Missing software version from the power unit.   |
| 2314      | Missing power unit data from the power unit.  |
| 2315      | Missing software version from the power unit.   |
| 2316      | Missing lo_statepage from the power unit.   |
| 2324      | The power card configuration is determined to be incorrect at power-up.                                       |
| 2325      | A power card has stopped communicating while mains power is applied.  |

| Number    | Text  |
|-----------|---|
| 2326      | The power card configuration is determined to be incorrect after the delay for power cards to register. |
| 2327      | Too many power card locations have been registered as present.  |
| 2330      | The power size information between the power cards does not match.                                      |
| 2561      | No communication from DSP to ATACD.   |
| 2562      | No communication from ATACD to DSP (state running).   |
| 2816      | Stack overflow control board module   |
| 2817      | Scheduler slow tasks  |
| 2818      | Fast tasks  |
| 2819      | Parameter thread  |
| 2820      | LCP stack overflow  |
| 2821      | Serial port overflow  |
| 2822      | USB port overflow   |
| 2836      | cflistMempool is too small.   |
| 3072-5122 | The parameter value is outside its limits.  |
| 5123      | Option in slot A: Hardware incompatible with the control board hardware.                                |
| 5124      | Option in slot B: Hardware incompatible with the control board hardware.                                |
| 5125      | Option in slot C0: Hardware incompatible with the control board hardware.                               |
| 5126      | Option in slot C1: Hardware incompatible with the control board hardware.                               |
| 5376-6231 | Out of memory   |

Table 8.4 Internal Fault, Code Numbers

**ALARM 39, Heat sink sensor**

No feedback from the heat sink temperature sensor.

The signal from the IGBT thermal sensor is not available on the power card. The problem could be on the power card, on the gate drive card, or the ribbon cable between the power card and gate drive card.

**WARNING 40, Overload of digital output terminal 27**

Check the load connected to terminal 27 or remove the short-circuit connection. Check *5-00 Digital I/O Mode* and *5-01 Terminal 27 Mode*.

**WARNING 41, Overload of digital output terminal 29**

Check the load connected to terminal 29 or remove the short-circuit connection. Check *5-00 Digital I/O Mode* and *parameter 5-02 Terminal 29 Mode*.

**WARNING 42, Overload of digital output on X30/6 or overload of digital output on X30/7**

For X30/6, check the load connected to X30/6 or remove the short-circuit connection. Check *5-32 Term X30/6 Digi Out (MCB 101)*.

For X30/7, check the load connected to X30/7 or remove the short-circuit connection. Check *5-33 Term X30/7 Digi Out (MCB 101)*.

**ALARM 46, Power card supply**

The supply on the power card is out of range.

There are 3 power supplies generated by the switch mode power supply (SMPS) on the power card: 24 V, 5 V, and ±18 V. When powered with 24 V DC with the MCB 107 option, only the 24 V and 5 V supplies are monitored. When powered with 3-phase mains voltage, all 3 supplies are monitored.

**WARNING 47, 24 V supply low**

The 24 V DC is measured on the control card. This alarm arises when the detected voltage of terminal 12 is <18 V.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check for a defective control card.

**WARNING 48, 1.8 V supply low**

The 1.8 V DC supply used on the control card is outside of the allowable limits. The power supply is measured on the control card. Check for a defective control card. If an option card is present, check for overvoltage.

**WARNING 49, Speed limit**

When the speed is outside of the specified range in *parameter 4-11 Motor Speed Low Limit [RPM]* and *parameter 4-13 Motor Speed High Limit [RPM]*, the frequency converter shows a warning. When the speed is below the specified limit in *1-86 Trip Speed Low [RPM]* (except when starting or stopping), the frequency converter trips.

**ALARM 50, AMA calibration failed**

Contact the Danfoss supplier or Danfoss Service.

**ALARM 51, AMA check  $U_{nom}$  and  $I_{nom}$**

The settings for motor voltage, motor current and motor power are wrong. Check the settings in *parameters 1-20 to 1-25*.

**ALARM 52, AMA low  $I_{nom}$**

The motor current is too low. Check the settings.

**ALARM 53, AMA motor too big**

The motor is too big for the AMA to operate.

**ALARM 54, AMA motor too small**

The motor is too small for the AMA to operate.

**ALARM 55, AMA parameter out of range**

The parameter values of the motor are outside of the acceptable range. AMA cannot run.

**ALARM 56, AMA interrupted by user**

The user has interrupted the AMA.

**ALARM 57, AMA internal fault**

Continue to restart the AMA, until the AMA is carried out.

**NOTICE**

Repeated runs may heat the motor to a level where the resistance  $R_s$  and  $R_r$  are increased. In most cases, however, this behaviour is not critical.

**ALARM 58, AMA Internal fault**

Contact your Danfoss supplier.

**WARNING 59, Current limit**

The current is higher than the value in *4-18 Current Limit*. Ensure that motor data in *parameters 1-20 to 1-25* are set correctly. Increase the current limit if necessary. Ensure that the system can operate safely at a higher limit.

**WARNING 60, External interlock**

External interlock has been activated. To resume normal operation, apply 24 V DC to the terminal programmed for external interlock and reset the frequency converter (via serial communication, digital I/O, or by pressing [Reset]).

**WARNING 62, Output frequency at maximum limit**

The output frequency is higher than the value set in *4-19 Max Output Frequency*.

**ALARM 64, Voltage Limit**

The load and speed combination demands a motor voltage higher than the actual DC-link voltage.

**WARNING/ALARM 65, Control card over temperature**

The cut-out temperature of the control card is 80 °C.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check that the ambient operating temperature is within the limits.
- Check for clogged filters.
- Check the fan operation.
- Check the control card.

**WARNING 66, Heat sink temperature low**

The frequency converter is too cold to operate. This warning is based on the temperature sensor in the IGBT module.

Increase the ambient temperature of the unit. Also, a trickle amount of current can be supplied to the frequency converter whenever the motor is stopped by setting *parameter 2-00 DC Hold/Preheat Current* at 5% and *parameter 1-80 Function at Stop*.

**Troubleshooting**

The heat sink temperature measured as 0 °C could indicate that the temperature sensor is defective, causing the fan speed to increase to the maximum. This warning results if the sensor wire between the IGBT and the gate drive card is disconnected. Also, check the IGBT thermal sensor.

**ALARM 67, Option module configuration has changed**

One or more options have either been added or removed since the last power-down. Check that the configuration change is intentional and reset the unit.

**ALARM 68, Safe Stop activated**

STO has been activated. To resume normal operation, apply 24 V DC to terminal 37, then send a reset signal (via bus, digital I/O, or by pressing [Reset]).

**ALARM 69, Power card temperature**

The temperature sensor on the power card is either too hot or too cold.

**Troubleshooting**

- Check the operation of the door fans.
- Check that the filters for the door fans are not blocked.
- Check that the gland plate is properly installed on IP21/IP54 (NEMA 1/12) frequency converters.

**ALARM 70, Illegal FC configuration**

The control card and power card are incompatible. To check compatibility, contact your Danfoss supplier with the type code of the unit from the nameplate and the part numbers of the cards.

**ALARM 72, Dangerous failure**

STO with trip lock. Unexpected signal levels on safe stop and digital input from the VLT® PTC Thermistor Card MCB 112.

**WARNING 73, Safe Stop auto restart**

Safe stopped. With automatic restart enabled, the motor could start when the fault is cleared.

**WARNING 76, Power unit setup**

The required number of power units does not match the detected number of active power units.

**WARNING 77, Reduced power mode**

The frequency converter is operating in reduced power mode (less than the allowed number of inverter sections). This warning is generated on power cycle when the frequency converter is set to run with fewer inverters and remains on.

**ALARM 79, Illegal power section configuration**

The scaling card has an incorrect part number or is not installed. The MK102 connector on the power card could not be installed.

**ALARM 80, Drive initialised to default value**

Parameter settings are initialised to default settings after a manual reset. To clear the alarm, reset the unit.

**ALARM 91, Analog input 54 wrong settings**

Switch S202 has to be set in position OFF (voltage input) when a KTY sensor is connected to analog input terminal 54.

**ALARM 92, No flow**

A no-flow condition has been detected in the system. *parameter 22-23 No-Flow Function* is set for alarm.

**Troubleshooting**

- Troubleshoot the system and reset the frequency converter after the fault has been cleared.

**ALARM 93, Dry pump**

A no-flow condition in the system with the frequency converter operating at high speed may indicate a dry pump. *parameter 22-26 Dry Pump Function* is set for alarm. Troubleshoot the system and reset the frequency converter after the fault has been cleared.

**ALARM 94, End of curve**

Feedback is lower than the set point. This may indicate leakage in the system. *22-50 End of Curve Function* is set for alarm.

**Troubleshooting**

- Troubleshoot the system and reset the frequency converter after the fault has been cleared.

**ALARM 95, Broken belt**

Torque is below the torque level set for no load, indicating a broken belt. *Parameter 22-60 Broken Belt Function* is set for alarm.

**Troubleshooting**

- Troubleshoot the system and reset the frequency converter after the fault has been cleared.

**ALARM 96, Start delayed**

Motor start has been delayed due to short-cycle protection. *Parameter 22-76 Interval between Starts* is enabled.

**Troubleshooting**

- Troubleshoot the system and reset the frequency converter after the fault has been cleared.

**WARNING 97, Stop delayed**

Stopping the motor has been delayed due to short -cycle protection. *Parameter 22-76 Interval between Starts* is enabled.

**Troubleshooting**

- Troubleshoot the system and reset the frequency converter after the fault has been cleared.

**WARNING 98, Clock fault**

Time is not set or the RTC clock has failed.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the clock in *0-70 Date and Time*.

**WARNING 201, Fire mode was active**

This indicates the frequency converter had entered fire mode. Cycle power to the unit to remove the warning. See the fire mode data in the alarm log.

**WARNING 202, Fire mode limits exceeded**

While operating in fire mode one or more alarm conditions have been ignored which would normally trip the unit. Operating in this condition voids unit warranty. Cycle power to the unit to remove the warning. See the fire mode data in the alarm log.

**WARNING 203, Missing motor**

With a frequency converter operating multi-motors, an under-load condition was detected. This could indicate a missing motor. Inspect the system for proper operation.

**WARNING 204, Locked rotor**

With a frequency converter operating multi-motors, an overload condition was detected. This could indicate a locked rotor. Inspect the motor for proper operation.

**ALARM 243, Brake IGBT**

This alarm is only for enclosure size F frequency converters. It is equivalent to Alarm 27. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

- 1 = Left most inverter module.
- 2 = Middle inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F3.
- 2 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F10 or F11.
- 2 = Second frequency converter from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 3 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.
- 3 = Third from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 4 = Far right inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 5 = Rectifier module.
- 6 = Right rectifier module in enclosure size F14.

**ALARM 244, Heat Sink temperature**

This alarm is only for enclosure type F frequency converters. It is equivalent to Alarm 29. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

- 1 = Left most inverter module.
- 2 = Middle inverter module in enclosure size F12 or F3.
- 2 = Right inverter module in enclosure size F10 or F11.
- 2 = Second frequency converter from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 3 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.
- 3 = Third from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 4 = Far right inverter module in enclosure sizes F14.
- 5 = Rectifier module.
- 6 = Right rectifier module in enclosure sizes F14.

**ALARM 245, Heat Sink sensor**

This alarm is only for enclosure size F frequency converters. It is equivalent to Alarm 39. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

- 1 = Left most inverter module.
- 2 = Middle inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.
- 2 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F10 or F11.

- 2 = Second frequency converter from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 3 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.
- 3 = Third from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 4 = Far right inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 5 = Rectifier module.
- 6 = Right rectifier module in enclosure size F14.

**ALARM 246, Power card supply**

This alarm is only for enclosure size F frequency converters. It is equivalent to Alarm 46. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

- 1 = Left most inverter module.
- 2 = Middle inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.
- 2 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F10 or F11.
- 2 = Second frequency converter from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 3 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.
- 3 = Third from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 4 = Far right inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 5 = Rectifier module.
- 6 = Right rectifier module in enclosure size F14.

**ALARM 247, Power card temperature**

This alarm is only for enclosure size F frequency converters. It is equivalent to Alarm 69. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

- 1 = Left most inverter module.
- 2 = Middle inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.
- 2 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F10 or F11.
- 2 = Second frequency converter from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 3 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.
- 3 = Third from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 4 = Far right inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 5 = Rectifier module.
- 6 = Right rectifier module in enclosure size F14.

**ALARM 248, Illegal power section configuration**

This alarm is only for enclosure size F frequency converters. It is equivalent to Alarm 79. The report value in the alarm log indicates which power module generated the alarm:

- 1 = Left most inverter module.
- 2 = Middle inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.
- 2 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F10 or F11.
- 2 = Second frequency converter from the left inverter module in enclosure size F14.
- 3 = Right inverter module in enclosure sizes F12 or F13.
- 3 = Third from the left inverter module in enclosure sizes F14.
- 4 = Far right inverter module in enclosure sizes F14.
- 5 = Rectifier module.
- 6 = Right rectifier module in enclosure size F14.

**WARNING 250, New spare part**

A component in the frequency converter has been replaced.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset the frequency converter for normal operation.

**WARNING 251, New typecode**

The power card or other components have been replaced and the typecode changed.

**Troubleshooting**

- Reset to remove the warning and resume normal operation.

**Index**

**A**

Abbreviations..... 5

Access to control terminal..... 42

Airflow..... 22

Alarm/warning code list..... 108

Alarms and warnings..... 106

AMA..... 48, 56, 111, 114

Analog input..... 96, 110

Analog output..... 96

Analog signal..... 110

Approvals..... 4

Auto energy optimization compressor..... 70

Auto energy optimization VT..... 70

Automatic motor adaptation (AMA)..... 48

**B**

Back cooling..... 22

Braje  
     Brake control..... 111

Brake  
     cable..... 37  
     control, mechanical..... 49, 50  
     resistor..... 110  
     resistor temperature switch..... 41

Braking..... 112

Branch circuit protection..... 38

**C**

Cable length and cross-section..... 30, 95

Cable, motor..... 36

Cabling..... 28

Changes made..... 62

Changing a group of numeric data values..... 89

Changing a text value..... 89

Changing data..... 89

Changing of data value..... 89

Changing parameter data..... 62

Closed loop..... 113

Coast inverse..... 63

Coasting..... 54

Communication option..... 113

Control cable..... 45, 47

Control card  
     Control card..... 110

Control card performance..... 98

Control card, 10 V DC output..... 98

Control card, 24 V DC output..... 97

Control card, RS-485 serial communication..... 97

Control card, USB serial communication..... 98

Control characteristic..... 98

Control terminal..... 42

Conventions..... 6

Cooling..... 22, 72

Current rating..... 110

**D**

DC link..... 110

Default setting..... 56

Delivery..... 9

Digital input..... 95, 111

Digital output..... 97

Dry pump function..... 87

Duct cooling..... 22

**E**

ELCB relay..... 35

Electrical installation..... 42, 45

Enclosure size F panel options..... 26

Example of changing parameter data..... 62

External fan supply..... 38

External temperature monitoring..... 27

**F**

Feedback..... 114, 116

Fieldbus connection..... 41

Function setup..... 66

Fuse..... 38, 113

Fuse tables..... 38

Fuse-protected terminals, 30 Amp..... 27

Fusing..... 28

**G**

General considerations..... 15

Gland/conduit entry, IP21 (NEMA 1) and IP54 (NEMA12)..... 23

GLCP..... 56

Graphical display..... 51

Grounding..... 35

**H**

Heat sink..... 114

High voltage..... 7



|  |          |   |               |
|--|----------|---|---------------|
| How to connect a PC to the frequency converter.....    | 55       | Motor overload protection.....                            | 72            |
| How to operate graphical LCP (GLCP).....               | 51       | Motor protection.....                                     | 98            |
| <b>I</b>   |          |   |               |
| Indexed parameter.....                                 | 90       | <b>N</b>  |               |
| Indicator lights (LED).....                            | 52       | NAMUR.....  | 26            |
| Initialisation.....                                    | 56       | No operation.....   | 63            |
| Input polarity of control terminals.....               | 47       | <b>O</b>  |               |
| Input terminal.....                                    | 110      | Output current.....                                       | 110           |
| Inspection on receipt.....                             | 9        | Output performance (U, V, W).....                         | 95            |
| Installation   |          | Overcurrent protection.....                               | 38            |
| Installation, mechanical.....                          | 15       | <b>P</b>  |               |
| Installation, electrical.....                          | 45       | Parallel connection of motors.....                        | 49            |
| Insulation resistance monitor (IRM).....               | 26       | Parameter data.....                                       | 62            |
| Intermediate circuit.....                              | 110      | Parameter menu structure.....                             | 91            |
| IT mains.....  | 35       | Parameter selection.....                                  | 88            |
| <b>L</b>   |          |   |               |
| Language package.....                                  | 64       | Parameter set-up.....                                     | 58            |
| LCP.....   | 56       | PC software tools.....                                    | 55            |
| LCP 102.....   | 51       | Phase loss.....   | 110           |
| Leakage current.....                                   | 7        | Planning the installation site.....                       | 9             |
| LED.....   | 51       | Potentiometer reference.....                              | 44            |
| Literature.....  | 4        | Power connection.....                                     | 28            |
| Local reference.....                                   | 65       | Profibus DP-V1.....                                       | 55            |
| Logging.....   | 62       | Programming.....  | 110           |
| Low power detection.....                               | 86       | Protection and features.....                              | 98            |
| Low speed detection.....                               | 86       | Pulse input.....  | 96            |
| <b>M</b>   |          |   |               |
| Main Menu.....   | 62       | Pulse start/stop.....                                     | 43            |
| Main Menu mode.....                                    | 53, 88   | <b>Q</b>  |               |
| Main reactance.....                                    | 70       | Qualified personnel.....                                  | 7             |
| Mains connection.....                                  | 37       | Quick Menu.....   | 62            |
| Mains supply (L1-1, L2-1, L3-1, L1-2, L2-2, L3-2)..... | 95       | Quick Menu mode.....                                      | 53, 62        |
| Manual motor starter.....                              | 26       | Quick Transfer of Parameter Settings when Using GLCP..... | 56            |
| Mechanical brake control.....                          | 49, 50   | <b>R</b>  |               |
| Mechanical dimensions.....                             | 14       | RCD (Residual current device).....                        | 26            |
| Mechanical Dimensions.....                             | 11       | Receiving the frequency converter.....                    | 9             |
| Mechanical installation.....                           | 15       | Relay output.....   | 97            |
| Motor  |          | Reset.....  | 110, 111, 115 |
| cable.....   | 36       | RFI switch.....   | 35            |
| current.....   | 114      | RS-485 bus connection.....                                | 54            |
| data.....  | 111, 115 | <b>S</b>  |               |
| nameplate.....   | 48       | Safe Torque Off.....                                      | 8             |
| power.....   | 114      | Screened cable.....                                       | 36            |
| thermal protection.....                                | 50       |   |               |
| Motor output.....                                      | 95       |   |               |

|  |         |
|--|---------|
| Screened/armoured.....                     | 47      |
| Screening of cables.....                   | 30      |
| Serial communication.....                  | 98      |
| Short circuit.....                         | 111     |
| Short-circuit protection.....              | 38      |
| Sine-wave filter.....                      | 30      |
| Space.....                                 | 15      |
| Space heaters and thermostat.....          | 26      |
| Speed up/down.....                         | 43      |
| Start/stop.....                            | 43      |
| Stator leakage reactance.....              | 70      |
| Status.....                                | 53      |
| Status messages.....                       | 51      |
| STO.....                                   | 8       |
| Supply voltage.....                        | 113     |
| Surrounding.....                           | 98      |
| Switches S201, S202 and S801.....          | 47      |
| Switching frequency.....                   | 30      |
| <br><b>T</b>                               |         |
| Terminal 54.....                           | 115     |
| Terminals, fuse-protected, 30 ampere.....  | 27      |
| Thermal motor protection.....              | 111     |
| Thermal protection.....                    | 5       |
| Thermistor.....                            | 72, 111 |
| Tightening torque.....                     | 35      |
| Torque.....                                | 35, 111 |
| Torque characteristic.....                 | 95      |
| <br><b>U</b>                               |         |
| Unintended motor rotation.....             | 8       |
| Unintended start.....                      | 7       |
| Unpacking.....                             | 9       |
| <br><b>V</b>                               |         |
| Voltage imbalance.....                     | 110     |
| Voltage level.....                         | 96      |
| Voltage reference via a potentiometer..... | 44      |
| VVC+.....                                  | 6       |
| <br><b>W</b>                               |         |
| Windmilling.....                           | 8       |
| Wire access.....                           | 15      |





[www.danfoss.com/drives](http://www.danfoss.com/drives)

.....  
Danfoss can accept no responsibility for possible errors in catalogues, brochures and other printed material. Danfoss reserves the right to alter its products without notice. This also applies to products already on order provided that such alterations can be made without subsequential changes being necessary in specifications already agreed. All trademarks in this material are property of the respective companies. Danfoss and the Danfoss logotype are trademarks of Danfoss A/S. All rights reserved.  
.....

Danfoss A/S  
Ulsnaes 1  
DK-6300 Graasten  
[www.danfoss.com/drives](http://www.danfoss.com/drives)

